



Tuzla Halk Eđitimi
Merkezi M¼d¼rl¼ę¼

Eđitim ve K¼lt¼r¼n
Buluřtuę¼ Yerde Buluřalım...

► İNGİLİZCE ÖęRENİYORUM (A1 SEVİYESİ)

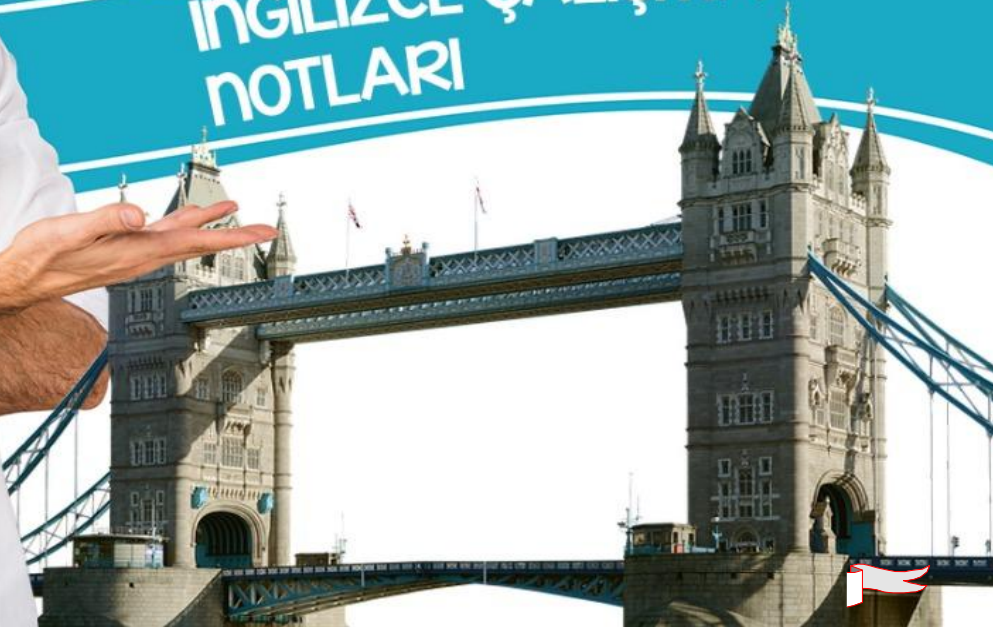
“ RED BLUE GREEN

WHAT IS YOUR NAME?
WHERE ARE YOU FROM?

ONE, TWO
THREE ”



İNGİLİZCE ALIřMA
NOTLARI



ÖNSÖZ

EĞİTİM VE KÜLTÜRÜN BULUŞTUĞU YERDE BULUŞALIM

Kursiyerlerimize eğitim seviyesi, yaş ve cinsiyet farkı gözetmeksizin ücretsiz olarak hizmet veren Tuzla Halk Eğitimi Merkezi, gerektiğinde resmi kurum ve çeşitli kuruluşlarla iş birliği yaparak, mesleki, sosyal, kültürel, sanatsal ve sportif faaliyetlerle hayat boyu yapılan eğitim, üretim, rehberlik ve uygulama etkinliklerine yönelik çalışmalarını devam ettirmektedir.

Tuzla Halk Eğitimi Merkezi, yılda ortalama 500 uzman öğretmeni ile 300 farklı alanda 450 kurs merkezinde 1750 kurs açarak yaklaşık 50 bin kursiyerine hizmet vermektedir.

Kurumumuz “Açık Ortaokulda ve açık lisede” toplamda 10 bin kadar açık öğrenim öğrencisine hizmet vererek Tuzla ilçesinin eğitim kalitesine büyük katkı sağlamaktadır. Ayrıca üniversiteye hazırlık için destekleme ve yetiştirme kurslarımıza katılan öğrencilerimizin her yıl %75 üzerinde öğrencimizin çeşitli üniversiteleri kazanmalarına ve yerleştirilmelerine büyük katkı sağladık.

Kurslarımızda verdiğimiz eğitim, hızlı değişimin insan hayatında ortaya çıkardığı yeni ihtiyaçların giderilmesinde bir çözüm olarak kabul edilebilir. Tuzla Halk Eğitimi Merkezi kursiyerlerine yaşadıkları yere en yakın kurumlarda ve merkez binamızda cam, çini, gümüş işlemeciliği, tekstil, şiş örücülüğü, ahşap boyama, nakış, dikiş, çocuk eğitimi, arıcılık, Osmanlıca, Kuran-ı Kerim, iletişim-diksiyon, bilgisayar, arıcılık, emlak danışmanlığı, hijyen eğitimi, okuma yazma eğitimi, bağlama, İngilizce, Arapça, Rusça, işaret dili, halk oyunları, spor ve diğer mesleki ve genel alanlarda talepler doğrultusunda kurslar açmaktadır. **Açılan kurslara kayıt yaptırmak isteyen vatandaşlarımız internet web sitemiz üzerinden kolaylıkla ön kayıt yaptırabilir.**


Metin ÇANGIR
Tuzla Halk Eğitimi Merkezi Müdürü

INDEX A1

1) THE INDEFINITE ARTICLES (A / AN)	1
2) THE VERB TO BE	2
3) SUBJECT PRONOUNS	4
4) ALSO / TOO / EITHER.....	5
5) CARDINAL AND ORDINAL NUMBERS.....	6
6) ASKING & TELLING TIME.....	7
7) COUNTRIES / NATIONALITIES.....	8
8) DEMONSTRATIVE ADJECTIVES.....	9
9) POSSESSIVE ADJECTIVES AND POSSESSIVE CASE.....	11
10) FAMILY.....	14
11) THERE IS / THERE ARE.....	16
12) SINGULAR AND PLURAL NOUNS.....	17
13) DAYS / MONTHS / SEASONS / DIRECTIONS.....	19
14) THE PREPOSITIONS OF TIME (IN / ON / AT).....	22
15) THE SIMPLE PRESENT TENSE	23
16) CAN	31
17) HAVE / HAS GOT.....	35
18) THE PRESENT CONTINUOUS TENSE.....	38
19) CLAUSES OF REASON.....	43
20) PRESENT CONTINUOUS FOR FUTURE.....	44
21) SIMPLE PRESENT OR PRESENT CONTINUOUS.....	45
22) COUNTABLE / UNCOUNTABLE NOUNS.....	46
23) ANY / SOME.....	48
24) A FEW / A LITTLE.....	49
25) IMPERATIVES.....	51
26) THE SIMPLE PAST TENSE OF VERB TO BE.....	52
27) THE SIMPLE PAST TENSE.....	55
28) CLAUSES OF RESULT.....	61
29) BE GOING TO FUTURE.....	62
30) MAY / MIGHT.....	66
31) MUCH / MANY / HOW MANY / HOW MUCH.....	67

32) OBJECT PRONOUNS.....	69
33) GERUNDS.....	70
34) INFINITIVES.....	73
35) THE PREPOSITIONS OF PLACES (IN / ON / AT).....	76
36) PREPOSITIONS OF PLACE (UNDER / BEHIND / OPPOSITE / NEXT TO)...	78
37) CLAUSES OF PURPOSE.....	79
38) FUTURE WILL.	80
39) BE GOING TO OR WILL	83
40) THE PAST CONTINUOUS TENSE.....	84
41) ADJECTIVES.....	87
42) ADVERBS.....	90
43) AS – AS.....	93
44) COMPARATIVE / SUPERLATIVE ADJECTIVES.....	94
45) THE MORE / THE MORE.....	100
46) SO OR SUCH.....	101
47) PICTURE: HUMAN BODY.....	103
48) PICTURE: PROFESSIONS.....	104
49) PICTURE: SPORTS.....	105
50) PICTURE: TRANSPORTATION.....	106
51) PICTURE: FAMOUS BUILDINGS.....	107
52) PICTURE: ANIMALS KINGDOM.....	109
53) PICTURES: FOOD.....	110
54) PICTURES: TOOLS.....	111
55) PICTURE: WEATHER.....	112
56) READING: SAPANCA OR NATURAL BEAUTY	113
57) READING: FIREMEN RESCUED A FAMILY	114
58) READING: ATATÜRK	115
59) READING: PEN FRIEND	116
60) READING: THE WRECKAGE	117
61) READING: THE ACCIDENTS	118
62) READING: HAYDARPAŞA STATION	119
63) READING: FRIENDS	120
64) READING: TRANSPORTATION	121
65) READING: ANIMALS	122

66) READING: EROSION	123
67) READING: MANDELA, NELSON	125
68) READING: ELEPHANTS	126
69) READING: PHONE KEEPS RINGING	127
70) THE LETTERS	129
71) DIALOGUES	134
72) PROGRESS TEST 1	145
73) PROGRESS TEST 2	147
74) PROGRESS TEST 3	149
75) PROGRESS TEST 4	151
76) PROGRESS TEST 5	153
77) PROGRESS TEST 6	155
78) PROGRESS TEST 7	157
79) PROGRESS TEST 8	159
80) PROGRESS TEST 9	161
81) PROGRESS TEST 10	163
82) PROGRESS TEST 11	165
83) PROGRESS TEST 12	167
84) PROGRESS TEST 13	169
85) PROGRESS TEST 14	171
86) PROGRESS TEST 15	173
87) PROGRESS TEST 16	175
88) VOCABULARY 1: Word Relations	177
89) VOCABULARY 2: Word Relations	178
90) VOCABULARY 3: Word Relations	179
91) VOCABULARY 4: Word Relations	180
92) VOCABULARY 5: Opposite Verbs	181
93) VOCABULARY 6: Opposite Adjectives	182
94) VOCABULARY 7: Adjective Phrases	183
95) VOCABULARY 8: Word Relations With “Have”	184
96) VOCABULARY 9: Word Relations With “Make” and “Do”	185
97) VOCABULARY 10: Word Relations With “Say” and “Tell”	186
98) INITIALS	187
99) INTERJECTIONS	191



100) AFFIXES	193
101) PHRASAL VERBS	197
102) JOKES	199
103) IDIOMS	200
104) PROVERBS	229
105) CLASSIFIED IRREGULAR VERBS	231
106) IRREGULAR VERBS	232

THE INDEFINITE ARTICLES “A / AN”

We use “a” before a word beginning with a consonant. “b, c, d, f, g, h, j, k, l, m, n, p, q, r, s, t, v, w, x, y, z”.

a book a ticket a glass a train.

We use “an” before a vowel. “a, e, i, o, u”.

an egg an exercise bike an elephant an orange an insect

When “u” or “eu” is used at beginning of a word, it is pronounced like “y”. We use “a” not “an” before it.

a European a university a union.

When “h” is used at the beginning of a word, it is not pronounced. We use “an” before it.

an hour an honest man

USAGE:

Before a singular countable noun.

This is a new book. Cyprus is an island.

With a person’s job.

Jane is a teacher. Rüştü is a footballer.

With a person’s character or status.

A singer is a person who sings songs.

Atatürk was a genius.

EXERCISE

A- Fill in the blanks with “a” or “an”.

- 1) _____ apple is _____ fruit.
- 2) This is _____ ugly picture.
- 3) My friend is _____ university student.
- 4) They live in _____ nice house.
- 5) Coke is _____ cold drink.
- 6) Turkey is _____ European country.
- 7) Ümit is _____ intelligent child.
- 8) Titanic was _____ European ship.
- 9) They always have _____ good time at school.
- 10) Is your father _____ engineer?

B. Write “a” or “an”

- 1) _____ armchair
- 2) _____ watch
- 3) _____ plate
- 4) _____ umbrella
- 5) _____ old man
- 6) _____ chair
- 7) _____ orange
- 8) _____ exciting game
- 9) _____ advertisement
- 10) _____ egg sandwich

☹ My father is at Yalova now.

☺ My father is in Yalova now.



We use “in” for cities, towns, countries etc.

THE VERB "TO BE"

AFFIRMATIVE		NEGATIVE		QUESTION
Long Form	Short Form	Long Form	Short Form	
I am	I'm	I am not	I'm not	Am I?
You are	You're	You are not	You aren't	Are you?
He is	He's	He is not	He isn't	Is he?
She is	She's	She is not	She isn't	Is she?
It is	It's	It is not	It isn't	Is it?
We are	We're	We are not	We aren't	Are we?
You are	You're	You are not	You aren't	Are you?
They are	They're	They are not	They aren't	Are they?

EXERCISES

A- Fill in the blanks with "am, is, are".

- | | |
|------------------|-----------------------------|
| 1) Jane _____ | 6) Hüseyin and you _____ |
| 2) Dog _____ | 7) Mr. and Mrs. Brown _____ |
| 3) Cup _____ | 8) Bülent and I _____ |
| 4) Aican _____ | 9) Roses _____ |
| 5) Schools _____ | 10) The boy _____ |

B- Complete the sentences with "am, is, are".

- | | |
|---|--|
| 1) My parents _____ on holiday. | 7) Lenny _____ a taxi driver. |
| 2) This is my son. He _____ a student. | 8) The police _____ at the police station. |
| 3) I _____ from Bayburt. | 9) My cousin _____ married to Mehmet. |
| 4) Sena _____ late for school. | 10) The women _____ at a party. |
| 5) My books _____ on the table. | 11) The knife _____ on the table. |
| 6) The new restaurant _____ very cheap. | 12) Tom's grandparents _____ in the village. |

C- Make the following sentences negative.

Example:

The example is easy.

The example isn't easy.

- | | |
|--------------------------------|--------|
| 1) It is cold today. | _____. |
| 2) My books are in the school. | _____. |
| 3) Orange is a vegetable. | _____. |
| 4) Nicole Kidman is a singer. | _____. |
| 5) His mother is a lawyer. | _____. |

☹ My father is in the village.

☺ My father is at the village.



We use "at" for small places.

D- Put the words in the right order and make sentences as in the example.

Example:

Are / ? / fifteen / you /

Are you fifteen?

- 1) Jane and Jack / not / are / students / _____.
- 2) a / she / singer / is / _____.
- 3) Alpay / footballer / a / is / _____.
- 4) is / Bill Gates / man / rich / ? / a / _____?
- 5) are / not / we / Americans / _____.

E- Give short answers to the following questions as in the examples.

Examples:

Is Kenan İmirzalıoğlu a singer?

No, he isn't.

Is Fatih Terim a coach?

Yes, he is.

Are they dancers?

Yes, they are.

- 1) Are you a doctor? _____.
- 2) Are you a girl? _____.
- 3) Is your school new? _____.
- 4) Are you tall? _____.
- 5) Are you a boy? _____.
- 6) Is English difficult? _____.
- 7) Is your teacher handsome? _____.
- 8) Is she a policewoman? _____.
- 9) Are they your grandparents? _____.
- 10) Is it a dog? _____.

F- Complete the dialogue with the correct form of the verb “to be”.

Banu : Hello. My name _____ Banu. What _____ your name?

Hüseyin : My name _____ Hüseyin. _____ you a singer?

Banu : No, I _____. I _____ a student. _____ you a student?

Hüseyin : Yes, I _____ a university student.

Banu : Who _____ the woman?

Hüseyin : She _____ my mother.

G- Complete the following sentences and write about yourself.

My name _____ (your name) . _____
from _____. _____ (a student). _____ (fourteen)

My friend's name _____ (your friend's name). _____ from
_____ (job). _____ (age).

☹ I'm sure to finish the work.

☺ I'm sure of finishing the work.



We use “be sure of doing something”.

SUBJECT PRONOUNS

Subject pronouns are “I, you, he, she, it, we, you, they”.

Examples:

Ayşe is a student.

She is a student.

Where are *your* books?

Where are *they*?

EXERCISES

A- Complete the following sentences with “I, you, he, she, it, we, they”.

- 1) Seda and I are friends. _____ are at the same school.
- 2) Tom and Sue are from England. _____ are from London.
- 3) My father’s name is Hüseyin. _____ is a pensioner.
- 4) _____ am John. _____ am a student.
- 5) What’s that? _____ is an English book.
- 6) Where is your father? _____ is at home.
- 7) This is my girlfriend. _____ is nineteen years old.
- 8) Where are you from? _____ am from Ankara.

B- Rewrite the following sentences using “he, she, it, we, you, they” as in the example.

Example:

Mr. Aydın isn’t a doctor.

He isn’t a doctor.

- 1) Esra is from Sinop. _____.
- 2) Metin and I are friends. _____.
- 3) My parents are 70 years old. _____.
- 4) Where is the camera? _____?
- 5) Is Nick an engineer? _____?
- 6) Is Kemer a city? _____?
- 7) Are the apples sweet? _____?
- 8) Özlem is a clever student. _____.

Bill Gates	}	He	Nesrin	}	She	The book	}	It	The girls	}	They
Revivo			İrem			The school			The children		
Joe			Mrs. Blake			The exercise			Tom and Ted		
Mehmet			Jane			The dog			Fırat and Semih		

☹ I am 1.70 metres high.

☺ I am 1.70 metres tall.



We use “tall” for people and “high” for buildings, trees etc.

ALSO / TOO / EITHER

We use “Too” after a positive verb.

Esra : I am an English teacher.

Mutlu : I am an English teacher, *too*.

We use “Either” after a negative verb.

A bird can't talk. A dog can't talk *either*.

We use “Also” with positive verbs. It is used in mid position.

I have got a car. My friend has *also* got a car.

EXERCISES

A- Complete the following sentences with “also”, “too” or “either”.

- 1) Kars is very cold. Ardahan is very cold _____.
- 2) My father isn't at home. His father isn't at home _____.
- 3) Ronaldo isn't an actor. Hagi isn't an actor _____.
- 4) Hale is a doctor. Her husband is _____ a doctor.
- 5) Our house has got four rooms. Their house has got four rooms _____.
- 6) My bag is brown. My suitcase is brown _____.
- 7) Diyarbakır is very hot. It is _____ very famous.
- 8) İzmit has got a bay. İzmir has got a bay _____.
- 9) My brother has got a car. He has _____ got a house.

B- Complete the following sentences with “also”, “too” or “either” as in the example.

- 1) I have got a computer. My friend has got a computer, too.
- 2) Rize is very green. Trabzon _____.
- 3) Ankara is very crowded. Adana _____.
- 4) Tarkan can sing well. Göksel _____.
- 5) My students are very hardworking. Hacer's _____.
- 6) Sapanca is a very green town. Bafra _____.
- 7) Mercedes isn't a cheap car. BMW _____.
- 8) The Sabancıs are a rich family. The Koçs _____.

☹ We bought a new home in the countryside.

☺ We bought a new house in the countryside.



We use “house” when we talk about the building.

CARDINAL AND ORDINAL NUMBERS

CARDINAL NUMBERS

1 one	11 eleven	21 twenty-one	31 thirty-one etc.
2 two	12 twelve	22 twenty-two	40 forty
3 three	13 thirteen	23 twenty-three	50 fifty
4 four	14 fourteen	24 twenty-four	60 sixty
5 five	15 fifteen	25 twenty-five	70 seventy
6 six	16 sixteen	26 twenty-six	80 eighty
7 seven	17 seventeen	27 twenty-seven	90 ninety
8 eight	18 eighteen	28 twenty-eight	100 a hundred
9 nine	19 nineteen	29 twenty-nine	1,000 a thousand
10 ten	20 twenty	30 thirty	1,000,000 a million

700	seven hundred
150	a hundred and fifty <i>or</i> one hundred and fifty
1,043	a thousand and forty-three <i>or</i> one thousand and forty-three
72,651	seventy-two thousand and six hundred and fifty-one
3,500,000	three million and five hundred thousand

ORDINAL NUMBERS

1 st first	11 th eleventh	21 st twenty-first	31 st thirty-first etc.
2 nd second	12 th twelfth	22 nd twenty-second	40 th fortieth
3 rd third	13 th thirteenth	23 rd twenty-third	50 th fiftieth
4 th fourth	14 th fourteenth	24 th twenty-fourth	60 th sixtieth
5 th fifth	15 th fifteenth	25 th twenty-fifth	70 th seventieth
6 th sixth	16 th sixteenth	26 th twenty-sixth	80 th eightieth
7 th seventh	17 th seventeenth	27 th twenty-seventh	90 th ninetieth
8 th eighth	18 th eighteenth	28 th twenty-eighth	100 th a hundredth
9 th ninth	19 th nineteenth	29 th twenty-ninth	1,000 th a thousandth
10 th tenth	20 th twentieth	30 th thirtieth	1,000,000 th a millionth

700 th	seven hundredth
150 th	a hundred and fiftieth <i>or</i> one hundred and fiftieth
1,043 rd	a thousand and forty-third <i>or</i> one thousand and forty-third
72,651 st	seventy-two thousand and six hundred and fifty-first
3,500,000 th	three million and five hundred thousandth

☹ Seven hundred twenty four

☺ Seven hundred and twenty four



We always use "and" before tens and units

ASKING & TELLING TIME

08:00	It's eight o'clock.	09:30	It is half past nine.
10:00	It's ten o'clock.	07:30	It is half past seven.
05:00	It's five o'clock.	03:30	It is half past three.
11:00	It's eleven o'clock.	06:30	It is half past six.
10:15	It's a quarter past ten.	07:45	It's a quarter to eight.
01:15	It's a quarter past one.	09:45	It's a quarter to ten.
03:15	It's a quarter past three.	05:45	It's a quarter to six.
02:15	It's a quarter past two.	01:45	It's a quarter to two.
05:10	It's ten past five.	10:35	It's twenty-five to eleven.
07:05	It's five past seven.	09:40	It's twenty to ten.
11:23	It's twenty-three past eleven.	10:52	It's eight minutes to eleven.
04:20	It's twenty past four.	08:55	It's five to nine.

We use "am" and "pm" to tell time.

Examples:

03:00 It's three o'clock am.

Midnight to midday = am.

15:00 It's three o'clock pm.

Midday to midnight = pm.



We can tell the time according to the digital system.

Examples:

02:15 Two fifteen.

08:22 Eight twenty-two.

11:11 Eleven eleven.

08:28 Eight twenty-eight.

We use the questions "What time is it?" or "What is the time?" to ask the time.

Examples:

What time is it? It's ten o'clock.

What's the time? It's half past two.

EXERCISES

A- Write the times.

10:00 _____
 07:30 _____
 09:45 _____
 01:15 _____
 08:20 _____
 05:40 _____
 15:22 _____

B- Write the times in numbers.

Ten o'clock. _____
 Ten past five _____
 Twenty to four _____
 Half past eleven _____
 A quarter to seven _____
 A quarter past one _____
 Nine twenty-three _____

☹ It is fifteen o'clock.

☺ It is three o'clock in the afternoon.



In the afternoon, we use "pm" or say "in the afternoon, evening"

COUNTRIES / NATIONALITIES

Country	Nationality	Country	Nationality
Algeria	Algerian	Ireland	Irish
America	American	Israel	Israeli
Argentina	Argentinean	Italy	Italian
Australia	Australian	Japan	Japanese
Belgium	Belgian	Malaysia	Malaysian
Brazil	Brazilian	Morocco	Moroccan
Britain	British	Nigeria	Nigerian
Bulgaria	Bulgarian	Norway	Norwegian
Canada	Canadian	Pakistan	Pakistani
Cyprus	Cypriot	Panama	Panamanian
Denmark	Danish	Poland	Polish
Egypt	Egyptian	Portugal	Portuguese
England	English	Russia	Russian
Finland	Finnish	Saudi Arabia	Saudi Arabian
France	French	Scotland	Scottish
Germany	German	Spain	Spanish
Greece	Greek	Sweden	Swedish
Holland	Dutch	Switzerland	Swiss
Hungary	Hungarian	Syria	Syrian
Indian	Indian	Turkey	Turkish

Example:

George Bush is from America.

He is American

Yoko is from Japan.

He is Japanese.

Mario Jardel is from Brazil.

He is Brazilian.

1) John Steinbeck _____.
He is _____.

6) Yuri Gagarin _____.
He is _____.

2) Michael Schumacher _____.
He's _____.

7) Maradona _____.
He is _____.

3) Michael Jordon _____.
He is _____.

8) My parents _____.
They are _____.

4) Martina Hingis _____.
She is _____.

9) Pablo Neruda _____.
He is _____.

5) Britney Spears _____.
She is _____.

10) Süreyya Ayhan _____.
She is _____.

☹ My friend is a typical Turkish.

☺ My friend is typically Turkish. Or My friend is a typical Turkish man.

Φ

After "typical" we use "Turkish man, English man, etc."

DEMONSTRATIVE ADJECTIVES (THIS, THAT, THESE, THOSE)

This, that, these, those can be used either for people or things.

Examples:

This student

That classroom

These books

Those houses

“This” is used for singular. It is used for something that is *next to* the speaker.

“That” is used for singular. It is used for something that is *not next to* the speaker.

“These” is used for plural. It is used for things that are *next to* the speaker.

“Those” is used for plural. It is used for things that are *not next to* the speaker.

This is a new book.

This is my mother.

That house is beautiful.

That is our car.

Are *these* your sunglasses?

These are my friends.

Those aren't my projects.

Those are his suitcases.

EXERCISES

A- Change the following sentences into plural as in the example.

Example:

This is a new car.

These are new cars.

1) That is an old house.

_____.

2) This is a dictionary.

_____.

3) That isn't a footballer.

_____.

4) Is that an orange?

_____?

5) Is that a disco?

_____?

B- Answer the following questions as in the examples.

Example:

Is this a grammar book?

Yes it is.

Yes. It's a grammar book.

Is this a parachute?

No, it isn't.

No. It isn't a parachute.

1) Is that your teacher?

Yes, she is. _____.

2) Are those students?

_____. No. _____.

3) Are these postcards?

Yes, _____. _____.

4) Is that a dog?

_____. No. _____.

5) Is that your mother?

Yes, _____. _____.

6) Are those your parents?

_____. No. _____.

7) Is that your decision?

Yes, _____. _____.

☹ The scene in my balcony is very beautiful.

☺ The scenery in my balcony is very beautiful.



“The scenery” is used to express general appearance.

C- Put the following sentences into correct order.

- 1) detective / man / is / that / a / _____.
- 2) These / old / are / books / _____.
- 3) Those / oranges / are / _____.
- 4) teacher / not / that / is / a / _____.
- 5) roses / those / are / ? / red / _____.

D- Answer the following questions as in the examples.

Examples:

- | | |
|-----------------|-------------------------|
| What is this? | <u>It's a skirt.</u> |
| What is that? | <u>It's an apple.</u> |
| What are these? | <u>They are snakes.</u> |
| What are those? | <u>They are buses.</u> |

- 1) What is that? _____ . (pencil case)
- 2) What is this? _____ . (radio)
- 3) What are those? _____ . (goose)
- 4) What are these? _____ . (knife)
- 5) What are those? _____ . (bicycle)

E- Answer the following questions as in the examples.

Examples:

- | | |
|---------------------------------|--------------------|
| Is this a book or a notebook? | It's a notebook. |
| Are those students or teachers? | They are teachers. |

- 1) Are these shoes or boots? (boots) _____.
- 2) Is that a table or a desk? (table) _____.
- 3) Is that a BMW or a VW? (VW) _____.
- 4) Are those glasses or bottles? (bottles) _____.
- 5) Are these tomatoes or onions? (onions) _____.
- 6) Is that a newspaper or a magazine? (magazine) _____.
- 7) Is that a cat or a dog? (dog) _____.
- 8) Is that a VCD or a DVD? (DVD) _____.
- 9) Are those his parents or grandparents? (parents) _____.
- 10) Are these trousers or jeans? (trousers) _____.

F- Choose the best answer

- 1) Are _____ your socks over there?
a) these b) those c) this d) that
- 2) Whose are _____ pens in my hand?
a) these b) those c) this d) that
- 3) _____ is my pen friend, Sally.
a) these b) those c) this d) that

☹ I told the students to go to the house after the lesson.

☺ I told the students to go home after the lesson.

ϕ We use "home" when we talk about the place we live in.

POSSESSIVE ADJECTIVES AND POSSESSIVE CASE

Possessive adjectives are; “my, your, his, her, its, our, your, their”.

Personal Pronouns

I
You
He
She
It
We
You
They

Possessive Adjectives

My
Your
His
Her
Its
Our
Your
Their

Possessive adjectives don't change. They are the same with singular and plural nouns.

This is *my* English book. These are *my* English books.

EXERCISE

A- Complete the following sentences with “my, your, his, her, its, our, your, their” as in the examples.

- 1) This is my girlfriend. Her name is Fiona.
- 2) My brother likes his English teacher very much.
- 3) She isn't in _____ office. She is out.
- 4) The students are in _____ classroom.
- 5) What is your name? _____ name is Ceren.
- 6) The dog is in _____ kennel.
- 7) We live in Istanbul. _____ house is in Istanbul.
- 8) Mr. and Mrs. Erdinç are teachers. _____ phone number is 512 22 25.
- 9) Do you live with _____ parents?
- 10) We love _____ new car.
- 11) I accept. This is _____ fault. .
- 12) The baby is sleeping in _____ bed.
- 13) The animals live in _____ habitat.
- 14) They will come to _____ house tonight. My mother is making cake for them.

☹ Two trucks have collided with each other.

☺ Two trucks have collided into each other.



We use “two things collided into each other”.

POSSESSIVE CASE

“’s” is used with singular and plural nouns not ending “’s”.

The boy’s bicycle. Hakan’s clothes. Women’s clothes. Men’s toilet.

A simple apostrophe (‘) is used with plural nouns ending in “s”.

A boys’ school. A girls’ dormitory.

With compounds the last word takes the (’s).

My mother in law’s house is in Samsun.

B- Rewrite the following sentences as in the examples.

Example:

Bülent’s office is on the first floor.

This is *my son’s* bicycle.

His office is on the first floor.

This is *his* bicycle.

- 1) Esra’s spelling is very nice. _____.
- 2) These are Mr. Brown’s dogs. _____.
- 3) My sisters’ husbands are in Istanbul. _____.
- 4) That is my dog’s kennel. _____.
- 5) Are they your and your sister’s bicycles? _____?
- 6) İlayda and Ömer’s mother works in a bank. _____.
- 7) Hüseyin’s toys are very colourful. _____.
- 8) Vildan is Ömer’s sister. _____.
- 9) Nurhan’s children are not with her now. _____.
- 10) Are those your father’s sunglasses? _____?

C- Look at the example and do the same.

Car / I

Toys / Hüseyin

This is *my* car.

These are *Hüseyin’s* toys.

- 1) Country / we _____.
- 2) School / I _____.
- 3) Bag / Ali and Can _____.
- 4) Cats / Asuman _____.
- 5) Watches / They _____.



Two girls collided into each other in the corridor.



Two girls collided with each other in the corridor.



We use “two people collided with each other”.

- 6) Apples / We _____.
- 7) Restaurant / Mr. Brown _____.
- 8) Umbrella / Salih _____.
- 9) House / You _____.
- 10) Shoes / Esin _____.

D- Complete the following sentences with “its, his, her, my, your”.

- 1) “Is Istanbul very crowded?”
“Yes, _____ population is over 10 millions.”
- 2) “Who’s that?”
“That’s my manager. _____ name is John Moore.”
- 3) “Do you live with your parents?”
“No, I live in Ankara and _____ family lives in İzmir.”
- 4) “Hello, I am Habib. What’s _____ name?” “_____ name is Marisa.”
- 5) “Is that your mother’s car?” “No, _____ car is a Mercedes.”
- 6) “Are these your baby’s clothes?” “No, _____ clothes are in the washing machine.”
- 7) “I lost _____ book. Can I use _____ book, please.” “Of course. Here you are.”
- 8) “How is _____ mother?” “Thanks, she is fine.”
- 9) In _____ opinion, the film was too boring.
I don’t share _____ opinion. It was very exciting for me.
- 10) I forgot _____ password. I can’t draw money from ATM.
Ask the bank’s officers. You need _____ help.

E. Complete the passage with these words.

from they an are his in is there

- (1)_____ name is David. He (2)_____ twenty years old. He is (3)_____ London
(4)_____ England. He is (5)_____ student at a language school in London. (6)_____ are
twenty students in his class. (7)_____ are from many different countries. The language lessons
(8)_____ very interesting.

☹️ “Of mice and men” consists ten chapters.

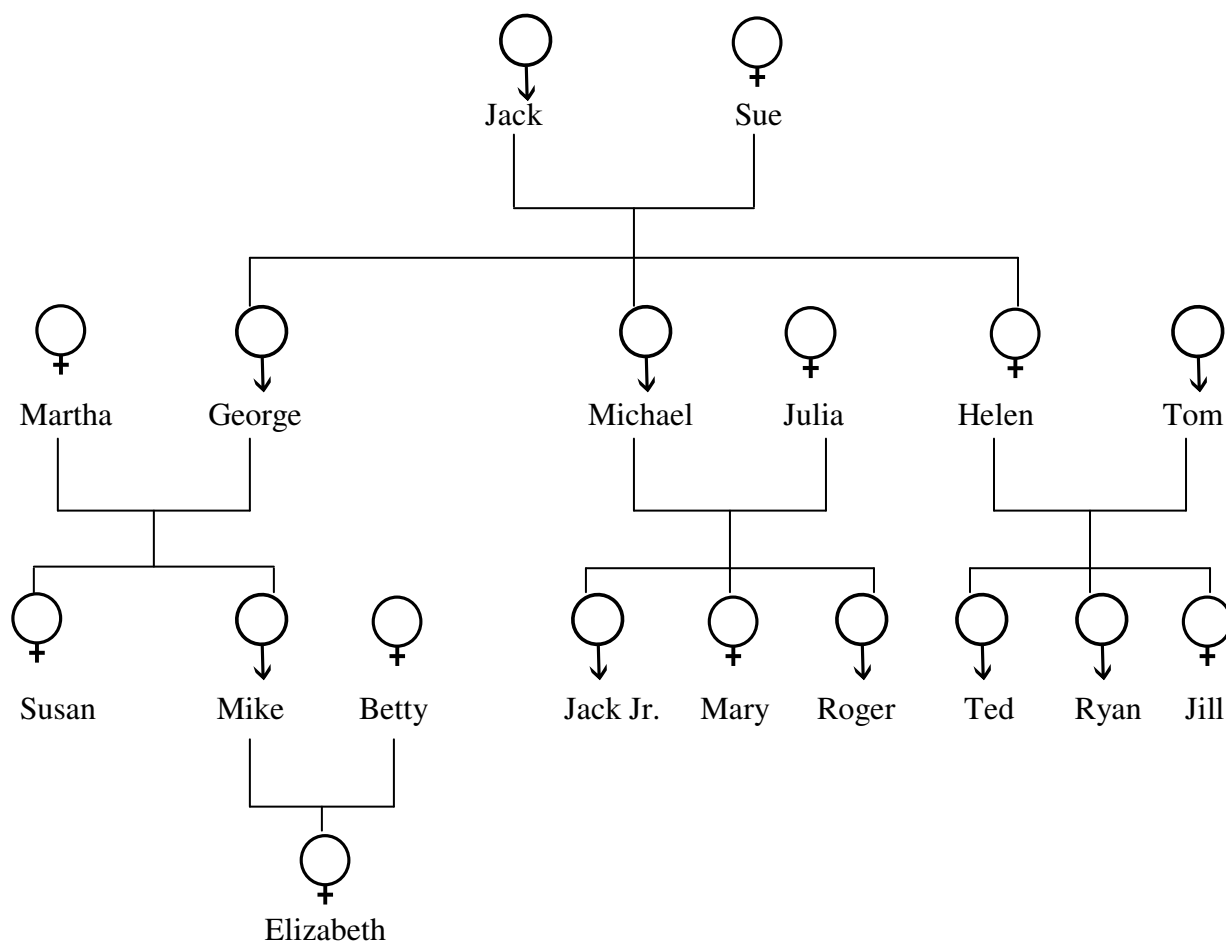
😊 “Of mice and men” consists of ten chapters.



We use “consist of parts or members”.

FAMILY

THE GRAND FAMILY



FAMILY RELATIONSHIP

grandfather	grandmother	father	mother	sister	brother	uncle
aunt	cousin	nephew	niece	husband	wife	son
granddaughter	grandson	brother-in-law	sister-in-law	father-in-law	mother-in-law	

Examples:

Jack is Sue's husband.

Sue is Michael's mother.

Mike is George's son.

Jack Jr. is Jack's grandson.

Mike is Helen's nephew.

Roger is George's nephew.

Martha is Michael's sister-in-law.

Susan is Helen's niece.

Tom is Michel's brother-in-law.

Sue is Julia's mother-in-law.



I almost lost the control of the car.



I almost lost control of the car.



We use "take or lose control of something" We don't use "the" before control.

EXERCISE

A- Complete the following sentences.

- 1) Betty is George's _____.
- 2) Mary is Sue's _____.
- 3) Susan is George's _____.
- 4) Jack Jr. is Julia _____.
- 5) Martha is Michael's _____.
- 6) Tom is Julia's _____.
- 7) Sue is Helen's _____.
- 8) Susan is Betty's _____.
- 9) Ryan is Jill's _____.
- 10) Roger is Ted's _____.



B- Complete the following sentences

- 1) Martha is _____ wife.
- 2) Sue is _____ wife.
- 3) Marry is _____ daughter.
- 4) Jack Jr. is _____ brother.
- 5) Elizabeth is _____ daughter.
- 6) Mike is _____ brother.
- 7) Susan is _____ sister.
- 8) Michael is _____ husband.
- 9) Tom is _____ son-in-law.
- 10) Martha is _____ daughter-in-law.

C- Give true answers to the following questions.

Example:

Who is your father's brother?

He is my uncle.

- 1) Who is your father's sister? _____.
- 2) Who is your uncle's son? _____.
- 3) Who is your aunt's daughter? _____.
- 4) Who is your father's mother? _____.
- 5) Who is your grandfather's wife? _____.
- 6) Who is your sister's son? _____.
- 7) Who is your brother's wife? _____.
- 8) Who is your mother's brother? _____.
- 9) Who is your sister's husband? _____.
- 10) Who is your mother's mother? _____.

☹ I don't feel like to study lesson

☺ I don't feel like studying lesson



We use "feel like doing something".

THERE IS / THERE ARE

We use “there is” for singular countable nouns and uncountable nouns.

We use “there are” for plural countable nouns.

Examples:

There is a television in the classroom.

There are 30 students in Prep A.

Is there a restaurant near here?

Are there many computers in your school?

EXERCISES

A- Complete the following sentences with “there is”, “there are”, “is there”, “are there” as in the example.

Examples:

There are five schools in our town.

There is a hotel near the lake.

- 1) _____ a big dog in the garden.
- 2) _____ four rooms in our house.
- 3) _____ an envelope on your table.
- 4) _____ a good restaurant near the school?
- 5) _____ a painting on the wall?
- 6) _____ ten plates in the cupboard.
- 7) _____ many children in the swimming pool?
- 8) _____ a bus to Samsun?

B- Complete the following sentences. What is there in your classroom?

- 1) There is one door in my classroom
- 2) _____ window/s _____.
- 3) _____ student/s _____.
- 4) _____ desk/ s _____.
- 5) _____ picture/s _____.
- 6) _____ table/s _____.

C- Complete the following sentences about Turkey.

- 1) There are seven _____.
- 2) There are eighty-one _____.
- 3) There are two _____ in İstanbul.
- 4) There are 550 _____ in the Turkish Grand National Assembly.
- 5) There are three _____ around Turkey.

☹ Green soap is very good for your hairs.

☺ Green soap is very good for your hair.



“Hair” is an uncountable noun.

SINGULAR AND PLURAL NOUNS

The plural form of a noun is usually made by adding “s” to singular nouns.

cat, cats teacher, teachers pencil, pencils

But there are some exceptions as below.

We add *es* after the nouns ending in “o”, “ss”, “sh”, “ch” or “x”.

potato, potatoes kiss, kisses brush, brushes watch, watches
box, boxes torch, torches

but some originally foreign words ending in “o” take only “s”.

piano, pianos photo, photos kimono, kimonos radio, radios

If a noun ends in “y” following a consonant we drop the “y” and add “ies”.

country, countries baby, babies fly, flies

but if a noun ends in “y” following vowel we add “s” only.

donkey, donkeys monkey, monkeys day, days

The nouns ending in “f” or “fe” we drop the “f” or “fe” and add “ves”.

knife, knives wolf, wolves thief, thieves wife, wives

some more nouns are:

life, self, calf, shelf, leaf, loaf, sheaf, half

* Some nouns have irregular plural nouns

man, men	mouse, mice	child, children	ox, oxen
louse, lice	woman, women	foot, feet	sheep, sheep
goose, geese	person, people	tooth, teeth	fish, fish

EXERCISES

A- Write the plural form of the following nouns.

boy	_____	roof	_____	policeman	_____
dress	_____	flower	_____	wolf	_____
dish	_____	address	_____	baby	_____
watch	_____	leaf	_____	sandwich	_____
ox	_____	sheep	_____	hotel	_____
girl	_____	shelf	_____	policewoman	_____

B- Underline the nouns in these sentences and make them plural.

- 1) I eat an apple, a banana, and an orange everyday. _____.
- 2) The train on the tracks is going to New York. _____.
- 3) One little cat lives in the old house. _____.

☹ The students are busy with studying lesson.

☺ The students are busy studying lesson.



We say “busy doing something”.

C- Change the following sentences into plural as in the example.

Example:

She is a policewoman.

They are policewomen.

- 1) The girl is from Sakarya.
- 2) The door is blue.
- 3) The street is very clean.
- 4) The baby is in the bed.
- 5) The leaf is green.
- 6) The child is happy.
- 7) It is a mouse.
- 8) She is a clever student.
- 9) I am a teacher.
- 10) The man is a worker.
- 11) My son is a student.
- 12) He is a footballer.

D- Change the following sentences into singular as in the example.

Example:

They aren't hardworking girls.

She isn't a hardworking girl.

- 1) They are good students.
- 2) The watches are colourful.
- 3) The sheep are in the field.
- 4) Are they happy babies?
- 5) The cats are in the tree.
- 6) The children are in the garden.
- 7) The policemen are in the police station.
- 8) They aren't apples. They are oranges.
- 9) The knives are on the shelf.
- 10) The wolves are in the zoo.
- 11) They aren't my books
- 12) The papers are white.

E- Place the words in the correct column.

house zoo tree engineer computer pen teacher mouse
Antalya paper airport driver hospital postman dentist

PERSON	PLACE	THING
<hr/>	<hr/>	<hr/>
<hr/>	<hr/>	<hr/>
<hr/>	<hr/>	<hr/>
<hr/>	<hr/>	<hr/>

☹ They don't care for dripping taps.

☺ They don't care about dripping taps.



If we use "care about something", it means it is important.

DAYS / MONTHS / SEASONS / DIRECTIONS

Days

Monday	(Mon.)
Tuesday	(Tues.)
Wednesday	(Wed.)
Thursday	(Thurs.)
Friday	(Fri.)
Saturday	(Sat.)
Sunday	(Sun.)

Months

January	(Jan.)	July	(July.)
February	(Feb.)	August	(Aug.)
March	(Mar.)	September	(Sept.)
April	(Apr.)	October	(Oct.)
May	(May.)	November	(Nov.)
June	(June.)	December	(Dec.)

Seasons

Spring
Summer
Autumn
Winter

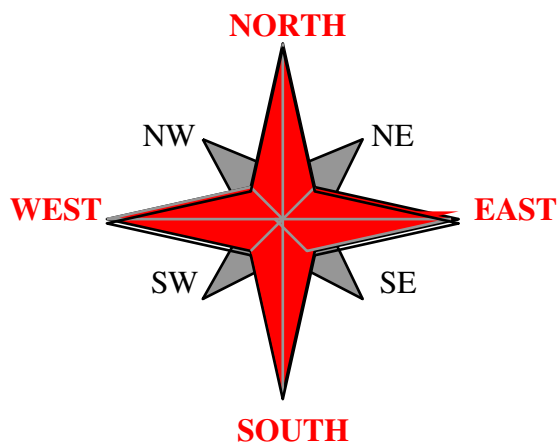
Monday	} Weekdays	Saturday	} Weekend
Tuesday		Sunday	
Wednesday			
Thursday			
Friday			

March	} Spring	June	} Summer	September	} Autumn	December	} Winter
April		July		October		January	
May		August		November		February	

In England, the week starts on “*Sunday*”.

Directions

N: North
S: South
W: West
E: East



Sub-Directions

NE: North-east
NW: North-west
SE: South-east
SW: South-west

☹ What is the latest month of the year?

☺ What is the last month of the year?



“*Last*” means the final one.

EXERCISES

A- Complete the sentences with days as in the examples.

Examples:

There are seven days in a week.

Monday is the first day of the week.

- 1) _____ is the first day of the week.
- 2) _____ is the second day of the week.
- 3) _____ is the third day of the week.
- 4) Thursday is the _____ of the week.
- 5) _____ is the fifth day of the week.
- 6) Saturday is the _____ of the week.
- 7) _____ is the seventh day of the week.
- 8) _____ is the day before Saturday.
- 9) _____ is the last day of the week.
- 10) _____ is the day after Tuesday.

B- Complete the following sentences with months as in the examples.

Example:

January is the first month of the year.

February is the second month of the year.

- 1) March _____.
- 2) April _____.
- 3) May _____.
- 4) June _____.
- 5) July _____.
- 6) August _____.
- 7) September _____.
- 8) October _____.
- 9) November _____.
- 10) December _____.
- 11) The sixth month of the year is _____.
- 12) The last month of the year is _____.
- 13) The first month of the year is _____.
- 14) _____ is the first month of Spring.
- 15) _____ is the last month of Autumn.

☹ The nurse cares about my father at the hospital.

☺ The nurse cares for my father at the hospital.



“care for” means; “look after”.



C- Look at the map and complete the following sentences as in the examples:

Example:

Van is *in the east of* Turkey

Samsun is *in the north of* Turkey.

- 1) İzmir _____.
- 2) Mersin _____.
- 3) Antalya _____.
- 4) Istanbul _____.
- 5) Trabzon _____.
- 6) Hakkari _____.
- 7) Sinop _____.

D- Answer the following questions.

- 1) What day is it today? _____.
- 2) What is the first month of the year? _____.
- 3) What are the spring months? _____.
- 4) Where is Tunceli? _____.
- 5) What is the second day of the week? _____.
- 6) What month is it now? _____.
- 7) What are the summer months? _____.
- 8) What is the last day of the week? _____.
- 9) What is the midday of the week? _____.
- 10) Is March the fifth month of the year? _____.

☹ They have little chance to pass the exam.

☺ They have little chance of passing the exam.



We use “*chance of doing something*”. It means “*likely*”.

PREPOSITIONS OF TIME (IN / ON / AT)

at	9 o'clock 11:30 midnight night the moment Christmas the end of June	on	Sunday Monday 24 November New Years day Sunday Morning Friday afternoon Saturday evening
in	April/May... 2002, 1964... the morning the afternoon, the evening Summer/Spring... ten minutes two days	from... -to	Saturday eight o'clock June Summer Monday ten August Autumn

***But we don't use preposition after this/last/next/every.**

EXERCISES

A- Use "at", "on", "in" and complete the followings.

- | | | |
|-------------------------|-----------------------|------------------------|
| 1) _____ July | 5) _____ five o'clock | 9) _____ three days |
| 2) _____ Monday evening | 6) _____ Summer | 10) _____ the Spring |
| 3) _____ the morning | 7) _____ the Autumn | 11) _____ five minutes |
| 4) _____ night | 8) _____ weekend | 12) _____ Christmas |

B- Use "at", "on", "in" and complete the following sentences.

- 1) Goodbye. See you _____ Sunday.
- 2) I come home _____ night.
- 3) The bus is leaving _____ ten minutes.
- 4) My father is going to Bayburt _____ two weeks.
- 5) I often visit my parents _____ the weekend.
- 6) Where are you going _____ Saturday evening?
- 7) Let's meet _____ 8:30 this evening.
- 8) We go on holiday _____ June _____ September
- 9) The workers work _____ 8 am. _____ 5 pm.
- 10) The workers go on holiday _____ July.

☹ The tourist changed the new T-shirt with another one.

☺ The tourist changed the new T-shirt for another one.



We use "change for" for something we don't want or like.

THE SIMPLE PRESENT TENSE

Affirmative

I drink milk
You drink milk
He drinks milk
She drinks milk
It drinks milk
We drink milk
They drink milk

Negative

I don't drink milk
You don't drink milk
He doesn't drink milk
She doesn't drink milk
It doesn't drink milk
We don't drink milk
They don't drink milk

Question

Do I drink milk?
Do you drink milk?
Does he drink milk?
Does she drink milk?
Does it drink milk?
Do we drink milk?
Do they drink milk?

We use The Simple Present Tense

A) For habitual actions / or for the actions which take place regularly or repeatedly.

Examples:

I *get up* early every day.

The children *drink* milk every night.

B) For permanent states.

Examples:

My father *works* in a factory.

I *live* in Düzce.

C) For general truths.

Examples:

The sun *rises* in the east and *sets* in the west.

Water *boils* at 100°C.

Water *freezes* at 0°C.

SPELLING

1) To the verbs ending in “-ss, -sh, -ch, -x and -o”, we add “es” to form the third person singular.

Examples:

box - boxes kiss - kisses touch - touches go - goes push - pushes

2) To the verbs ending -y following consonant, we add “ies” and drop the “y”.

Examples:

carry - carries study - studies

But to the verbs ending in “y”, following a vowel we add only “s”.

Examples:

play - plays say - says obey - obeys

☹ Especially girls like pop music in Turkey.

☺ Girls especially like pop music in Turkey.



A sentence doesn't start with “especially”.

Pronunciation:

/s/ if the verb ends in “f”, “k”, “p”, or “t” sounds.

Examples:

hits laughs interrupts kicks

/ɪz/ if the verb ends in “s”, “sh”, “ch”, “z”.

Examples:

brushes touches changes chooses

/z/ if the verb ends in any other sounds.

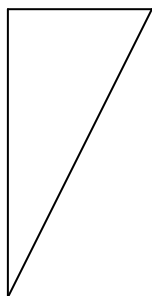
Examples:

falls knows grows bites lends

TIME EXPRESSIONS

FREQUENCY ADVERBS

always
usually
often
sometimes
occasionally
seldom
rarely
never



Every	hour
	morning
	afternoon
	evening
	night
	day
	week
	month
	year
	Sunday.....

* before the main verbs

in	the mornings the afternoons the evenings summers autumn / spring / winter	at	nights weekends	on	Sunday Monday Tuesday	once twice three times four times	a day a week a month a year
----	---	----	--------------------	----	-----------------------------	---	--------------------------------------

Examples:

My son *always* gets up early.

Nilgün *rarely* drinks coffee in the evening

Mr. Tobey goes to the seaside *every Sunday*.

I have breakfast at home *in the mornings*.

Do you play computer games *in the evening*?

We visit our parents *at the weekends*.

They have dinner out *twice a month*.

I don't go to school *on Saturday and Sunday*.

I *never* have breakfast in bed.

The students go to gym *every week*.

Robert has a shower *every night*.

They don't watch TV *in the afternoon*.

They listen to music *at nights*.

My wife goes to market *on Fridays*.

She goes to the cinema *once a week*.

We go on a holiday *once a year*.

☹ I have two children. They help one another.

☺ I have two children. They help each other.



If there are two people, we use “each other”.

EXERCISES

A- Write the pronunciation of the following verbs for the third person singular.

eat	go	study	meet	know	fall
catch	hang	leave	fight	think	brush

/s/	/ɪz/	/z/

B- Write the spelling of the following verbs for the third person singular.

make	fall	touch	go	do	study	carry
catch	fly	read	try	steal	bury	wake

-s	-es	-ies

C- Complete the sentences with the correct form of verbs.

- 1) Banu sometimes _____ to school on Sundays. (go)
- 2) I often _____ letters to my friends. (write)
- 3) They _____ the streets everyday. (clean)
- 4) The Browns _____ on a holiday every year. (go)
- 5) The School _____ at 8:30 every day. (start)
- 6) Dogs never _____ grass. (eat)
- 7) Our teacher _____ us a lot of homework. (give)
- 8) The students _____ English 10 hours a week. (study)
- 9) She _____ her lessons very hard. (study)
- 10) My wife never _____ my birthday. (forget)

☹ I have three children. They help each other.

☺ I have three children. They help one another.



If there are more than two people, we use "one another".

D- Rewrite the following sentences using “he”, “she” or “it” as in the example.

Example:

I never eat row meat. (It)

It never eats row meat.

1) They go to school by bus every day. (She)

2) We visit the historical places in Istanbul in summers. (He)

3) They watch cartoons on TV after school. (She)

4) The shops open at 8:00 in the morning. (It)

5) Andrew and his friends go swimming at the weekends. (She)

E- Put the following words into the correct order and make sentences. (add “s” for the third person singular)

1) go / my / to / Alanya / father / every summer.

2) usually / arrive / late / home / I / in / evenings / the.

3) my / daughter / basketball / and / son / go / at / the / course / weekend / to /.

4) TV / watch / my / in / wife / evenings / the.

5) fly / birds / the / in / south / winter / the / to /.

6) their / have / family / always / at / 7 o'clock / dinner.

7) everyday / to / drive / I / school.

8) a lot of / visit / Turkey / tourists / every year.

9) cake / my / really / wife / make / good.

10) Nuran / every year / another / travel / country/ to

11) what / mean / Turkish / word / this / in / do / ?

12) have/ my / piano / at / daughter / lessons / school

☹ Students do a lot of spelling mistakes.

😊 Students make a lot of spelling mistakes.



For mistakes, we always use “make”.

F- Rewrite the following sentences in negative as in the example.

Example:

I drive car every day.

I don't drive car every day.

1) I have a shower every day.

2) Her son goes to bed at 10 o'clock.

3) Sarah speaks two languages.

4) We go shopping everyday.

5) Our teacher works hard at the weekends.

6) The students send e-mails to their friends.

7) The dog barks every night.

8) The shop opens at 7 everyday.

9) They never go fishing in the lake.

10) Cem and Can study at University.

G- Complete the sentences as in the example.

	Pop Music	Football	Watching TV	Computer Games
Margaret	✓	X	✓	X
Tom and Bill	X	✓	X	✓
You				
Your friend				

Example:

Margaret likes pop music and watching TV, but she doesn't like football or computer games.

1) Tom and Bill _____

2) I _____

3) My friend _____



A lot of people attend weekend courses of English at the language centre.



A lot of people attend weekend classes in English at the language centre.



We use "classes in subjects".

H- Complete the following sentences with do / does and correct form of the verb.

- 1) _____ it often _____ (rain) here?
- 2) _____ you always _____ (go) to bed late?
- 3) _____ your mother _____ (cook) well?
- 4) _____ they _____ (go) to work on foot?
- 5) _____ he _____ (play) football a lot?
- 6) _____ your father _____ (speak) English?

I- Give short answers to the following questions as in the example.

Example:

Do you often visit your friends?

Yes, I do.

- 1) Does your mother prepare breakfast for you?
- 2) Does it rain a lot in your town?
- 3) Does your father go to bed late?
- 4) Do your parents take you to the cinema?
- 5) Do you always wash your father's car?
- 6) Do your relatives often visit you?
- 7) Do you and your friend drink coke a lot?
- 8) Do you go out in the evenings?

Where / When / What / How often / What time / Who / How much / How many

- I usually go to bed at midnight (when)
When do you usually go to bed?
- My parents live in Istanbul. (where)
Where do your parents live?
- The film starts at 8:30 (what time)
What time does the film start?
- Mr. Kaya often goes to Ankara with his friends. (who)
Who often goes to Ankara with his friends?
- Mr. Kaya often goes to Ankara with his friends. (who)
Who does Mr. Kaya often go to Ankara with?
- We sometimes have lunch out. (how often)
How often do you have lunch out?
- My father drinks a lot of tea in the mornings (How much)
How much tea does your father drink in the mornings?
- They buy two loaves of bread everyday. (How many)
How many loaves of bread do they buy every day?
- George works in a company in Istanbul. (where)
Where does George work in a company.?
- The teachers give homework every weekend. (how often)
How often do the teachers give homework?

☹ The man came close to the boy and asked the address.

☺ The man came up the boy and asked the address.



We use "come up" when we go towards someone.

J- Ask questions as in the examples above.

1) My son has his lunch at the school cafe everyday.

a- _____

b- _____

c- _____

2) Some birds always fly to the south in winter.

a- _____

b- _____

3) Hüseyin drinks two glasses of milk everyday.

a- _____

b- _____

4) I help my friend at the weekends.

a- _____

b- _____

5) A lot of students go to school by bus.

a- _____

b- _____

6) They clean the streets at night everyday.

a- _____

b- _____

c- _____

d- _____

K- Answer the following questions.

1) Where does your father work?

2) How often do you go swimming?

3) Where do the students play football?

4) Where do your grandparents live?

5) What time does your mother go to work?

6) How often does your father write a letter?

☹ He never lets his family life interfere his work.

☺ He never lets his family life interfere with his work.



We use "with" after "interfere".

7) What do the students wear for school?

8) How often do you brush your teeth?

9) Who helps you with your homework?

10) Do you often go jogging in the park?

L- Match the following sentences.

a) Where do you sit in the class?	1) at 4:30 pm.	a	....
b) How often do you watch movies?	2) in Çankaya.	b	....
c) When does your school finish?	3) at the front row.	c	....
d) Where do you buy clothes?	4) in Samsun.	d	....
e) Do you walk to school everyday?	5) Yes, I do.	e	....
f) Where do your parents live?	6) at a shop.	f	....
g) Where does The President live?	7) No, I don't.	g	....
h) Do you have lunch at school cafeteria?	8) at the post office.	h	....
i) Does your father read newspaper everyday?	9) Yes, he does.	i	....
j) Where do you post the letters?	10) sometimes.	j	....

M- Use the following verbs to complete the sentences.

play flow take go grow make set use

- 1) The earth ._____ round the sun.
- 2) Tea _____ in Rize.
- 3) Terry is a musician. She _____ the drums in the school band
- 4) The sun _____ in the west.
- 5) Bees _____ honey.
- 6) The River Kızılırmak _____ into the Black Sea.
- 7) Who _____ computer very well?
- 8) My friend _____ photographs of famous people.

N- Answer the following questions.

How often do you...

- a) help your mother with the housework? _____.
- b) watch TV in the evenings? _____.
- c) play sports in your free time? _____.
- d) go out with your friends to the cinema at the weekends? _____.
- e) wake up very early? _____.
- f) go to parties? _____.
- g) eat spicy food? _____.



They were very pleased with the invitation for the party.



They were very pleased with the invitation to the party.



We use "invitation to party, wedding, ceremony, etc."

CAN

We use “can” to express general ability.

Examples:

My friend *can* speak Italian.

I *can* swim very well.

We use “can” to express general possibility.

Examples:

You *can* park your car here.

You *can* play football in the school yard.

We use “can” for giving and asking permission.

Examples:

Can I have your dictionary, please?

You *can* phone from my house.

We use “can” to offer something or ask people to do things.

Examples:

Can I help you?

Can you open the window, please?

NOTE: We use “be able to” instead of “can”. But “be able to” is only used about people not things.

Examples:

I am *not able to* fly.

A fish *can't* fly.

We can use “be able to” with all tenses.

Example:

I will *be able to* visit my friends.

CAN NOT = CAN'T

EXERCISES

A- Make true sentences using “can” or “can't” as in the examples.

Examples:

A bird / fly

A bird *can* fly.

A dog / play football

A dog *can't* play football.

1) An engineer / build houses

_____.

2) A cat / jump

_____.

3) An elephant / run fast

_____.

4) A doctor / pull teeth

_____.

5) A teacher / teach English

_____.



Can you do a favour to me?



Can you do me a favour?



We use indirect object after “do”.

B- Give short answers to the following questions as in the examples

Examples:

Can you play football?

Yes, I *can*.

Can your father cook?

No, he *can't*.

- 1) Can your sister dance well? _____.
- 2) Can you ride a horse? _____.
- 3) Can your grandparents walk fast? _____.
- 4) Can your teacher speak Japanese? _____.
- 5) Can babies walk? _____.
- 6) Can you drive a car? _____.
- 7) Can a lion run fast? _____.
- 8) Can a dog climb the tree? _____.
- 9) Can a computer think? _____.
- 10) Can you live on an island alone? _____.

C- Write sentences according to the table as in the example.

	James	John	You	Your Friend
Speak Turkish	✓	X		
Use computer	✓	✓		
Run fast	X	✓		
Play a musical instrument	X	X		
Iron clothes	✓	X		
Swim well	X	✓		
Cook well	X	X		
Ride a motorbike	✓	✓		

Example:

James *can* speak Turkish, use computer, iron clothes and ride a motorbike but he *can't* run fast, play a musical instrument, swim well or cook well.

1) John _____

_____.

2) I _____

_____.

3) My friend (name) _____

_____.

☹ Many people are involved education.

☺ Many people are involved in education.



"Involve" takes "in" after it, if it means taking part in something.

D- Put the words into correct order and make sentences.

1) Can / my friend / German / well / speak /

2) Alican / football / play / can /

3) Can / computer / use / not / father / my /

4) Go / my / son / to bed / can / late / Saturday nights / on /

5) Can / listen / you / music / to / your room / in / ? /

We can ask questions with can using “where”, “what”, “who”, “when”, “which”, “how” and “why”.

Examples:

Where can you buy books?

What can a footballer do?

Who can fly a plane?

When can you leave your school?

Which can run fast? A horse or a donkey?

Why can't you drive a car?

How can I go to Samsun?

I can buy books from the bookshop.

He can play football.

A pilot can fly a plane.

I can leave at 4 o'clock.

A horse can run fast.

Because I haven't got a driving-licence.

You can go by bus or by car.

E- Give true answers to the following questions as in the examples above.

1) Who can speak English in your family?

2) Who can look after the babies?

3) Who can treat the patients?

4) Where can you borrow books?

5) Where can you visit the animals?

6) Where can you have a picnic?

7) What can't you do in the school?

8) What can you get from the bank?

9) What can the students do after school?

☹ They live on Cyprus.

☺ They live in Cyprus.



We use “live in” before countries.

10) When can you go on a holiday?

11) When can people play snowball?

12) Which car can go faster? A Şahin or a Mercedes?

13) Which one can help you? Your teacher or your father?

14) How can you go to Cyprus?

15) Why can't you open the window?

16) Why can't your grandfather climb a tree?

17) Who can teach you how to swim?

18) Where can you do science experiments?

19) What can you catch in the lake?

20) How many languages can your English teacher speak?

21) How many kilometres can you run a day?

22) How many pages of book can you read a day?

23) How much water can you drink in a meal?

24) Where can people have a picnic in your town?

25) Who can use computer in your family?

26) What can a barber do for you?

F- Complete the sentences with the following words

help translate speak drive get

1) She can _____ a car very fast.

2) The manager can _____ Italian.

3) Can you _____ me with my homework?

4) I can _____ some songs into English.

5) When can you _____ a driving-licence in Turkey?

☹ They live in an island.

☺ They live on an island.



We use "live on" before island.

HAVE / HAS GOT

Affirmative

I have got
You have got
He has got
She has got
It has got
We have got
They have got

Negative

I haven't got
You haven't got
He hasn't got
She hasn't got
It hasn't got
We haven't got
They haven't got

Question

Have I got?
Have you got?
Has he got?
Has she got?
Has it got?
Have we got?
Have they got?

Short Form

I've got
You've got
He's got
She's got
It's got
We've got
They've got

We use “have / has got” for possession.

Examples:

My friend *has got* a car.

Have you got a bicycle?

They *haven't got* many friends in Istanbul.

We use “have / has got” for illnesses.

Examples:

I *have got* a headache

Has she got a cold?

She *'s got* a toothache.

We use “have / has got” for descriptions.

Examples:

She *has got* blue eyes and blonde hair.

He *'s got* a big nose and big mouth.

EXERCISES

A- Read the following paragraph and then write about your room.

Hakan has got a bed, a chair and a cupboard. He has got a table. He hasn't got a TV in his room but he's got a computer. He has got a lot of books in the bookshelf. He has got some posters on the walls. He has got a lot of CD's in the drawer.

I _____

_____.

☹ My wife has got a lot of jewelleries.

☺ My wife has got a lot of jewellery.



“Jewellery” is an uncountable noun.

We use question words with “have / has got” such as “what”, “what kind of”, “who”, “where”, “how many”, “how much”

Examples:

What have you got in your hand?

Where have they got some relatives?

What kind of a car have they got?

Who has got an earache?

How many rooms have you got in your house?

B- Complete the following sentences using the question words as in the example and answer them.

Example:

Who has got an umbrella?

My father has got an umbrella.

- 1) _____ have they got in their bags? _____.
- 2) _____ a bicycle has your friend got? _____.
- 3) _____ books have you got in your library? _____.
- 4) _____ has Mr. Smith got in the garage? _____.
- 5) _____ has got long hair? _____.
- 6) _____ milk have you got in the fridge? _____.
- 7) _____ has she got in her room? _____.
- 8) _____ have your friends got a new villa? _____.
- 9) _____ a telephone has your father got? _____.
- 10) _____ teachers have you got in your school? _____.
- 11) _____ bread have you got in your bag? _____.

C- Read the example and write for you and your friend.

	Tom	You	Your friend
Brothers	X		
Sisters	2		
Pen Friend	✓		
Computer	✓		
Football	X		
Mobile Phone	✓		
Motorbike	X		

Example:

Tom has got two sisters, a pen friend, a computer and a mobile phone. He's not got any brothers, footballs or a motorbike.

I _____

My friend _____

☹ My son is very keen to chocolate.

☺ My son is very keen on chocolate.



We use “keen on something”.

D- Complete the following sentences using “have / has got”.

- 1) My brother _____ a very good job.
- 2) I _____ one brother and two sisters.
- 3) The dog _____ a long tail.
- 4) The director _____ a new car.
- 5) Jane and Jade _____ computers
- 6) You _____ a house near the lake.
- 7) I and my friend _____ a problem.
- 8) Sarah _____ a bad headache.
- 9) We _____ a lot of books in our library.
- 10) He _____ a new pen friend.

E- Give short answers to the questions as in the examples.

Examples:

Has she got a new camera? (+)

Yes, she has.

Have you got an umbrella? (-)

No, I haven't

- 1) Has your father got a cold? (+)
- 2) Have they got a TV in their room? (-)
- 3) Has your mother got bracelets? (+)
- 4) Has their house got a garden? (+)
- 5) Have you got beautiful eyes? (+)
- 6) Have Charles and David got a computer in their room? (-)
- 7) Have you and your friend got red pens? (-)
- 8) Has your English teacher got a car? (+)

F- Write questions as in the example.

Example:

(She / sister)

Has she got a sister?

- 1) (your mother / car)
- 2) (your friend / e-mail address)
- 3) (your school / computer room)
- 4) (Cem / many friends)
- 5) (Mr. and Mrs. Gül / any children)
- 6) (Your parents / summer house)
- 7) (Cenk / coin collection)
- 8) (The lion / mane)

☹ My son is very keen on to eat chocolate.

☺ My son is very keen on eating chocolate.



We use “keen on doing something”.

THE PRESENT CONTINUOUS TENSE

Affirmative

I am walking.
You are walking.
He is walking.
She is walking.
It is walking.
We are walking.
They are walking.

Negative

I am not walking.
You are not walking.
He is not walking.
She is not walking.
It is not walking.
We are not walking.
They are not walking.

Question

Am I walking?
Are you walking?
Is he walking?
Is she walking?
Is it walking?
Are we walking?
Are they walking?

Short Form

I'm
You're
He's
She's
It's
We're
They're

We use The Present Continuous Tense

A) For actions happening now.

Examples:

I *am writing* an example.

It *is not raining* outside.

My son *is doing* his homework.

B) For the action happening about this time, but not necessarily at the time of speaking or during current period of time.

Examples:

He *is reading* a book by Orhan Pamuk.

They *are working* on a dam project.

I *am teaching* English.

My friend *is studying* science at University.

SPELLING

1) If a verb ends in a single “e”, that –e drops before **-ing**

Examples:

have – *having* smile – *smiling* write – *writing*

but if the verb ends in double “e” we add only **-ing**

agree – *agreeing* see – *seeing*

2) If a verb of one syllable has one vowel and ends in a single consonant, the consonant is doubled.

Examples:

sit – *sitting* stop – *stopping* cut – *cutting*

3) If a verb of two or more syllables has one vowel in the last syllable and ends in a single consonant, the consonant is doubled.

Examples:

begin – *beginning* travel – *travelling* forget – *forgetting*

☹ We are reading English in the library.

☺ We are studying English in the library.



We use “study” for subjects.

4) We don't use the verbs which express feeling, emotions and show possession in Present Continuous tense.

like – love – want – know – prefer – understand – remember – depend – hate – forget
need – believe – think – recognize – see – trust – value – smell – cost – disagree

TIME EXPRESSIONS

We use **now**, **at the moment**, **at present**, **today**, **nowadays**, **these days**, **this week** etc. in Present Continuous Tense. They generally take place at the end of the sentence but they can be used at the beginning, too.

Examples:

The children are playing in the garden *now*.

The dog is barking *at the moment*.

I am tidying my room *today*.

Julie is reading a new book *this week*.

EXERCISES

A- Use the verbs in brackets and complete the sentences in Present Continuous Tense.

- 1) My wife _____ dinner in the kitchen. (prepare)
- 2) Nick _____ on a new book project. (work)
- 3) We are at the cafe. We _____ tea. (drink)
- 4) The students are at the disco. They _____ a great time (have)
- 5) Semra and her husband _____ the shop window. (arrange)
- 6) Some people _____ songs in the garden. (sing)
- 7) My friend _____ at the lake side. (fish)
- 8) Hakan _____ tea at the moment (make)
- 9) Dog _____ in its kennel (sleep)
- 10) The police _____ the thieves (look for)

B- Complete the sentences about the family as in the example.

- | | |
|---|---|
| 1) Mum / in the kitchen / feed the baby. | Mum is in the kitchen. She is feeding the baby. |
| 2) Grandpa / in his room / sleep. | _____. |
| 3) Brother John / garage / mend the motorbike | _____. |
| 4) Dad / in the garden / mow the grass | _____. |
| 5) Sister Clara / living room / watch TV | _____. |

☹ My friend is reading at Bosphorus University.

☺ My friend is studying at Bosphorus University.



"Studying" means; "He is a student at Bosphorus University."

B- Match the following questions.

- | | |
|--|---------------------------------------|
| a) Is Martin drinking coffee? | 1) No. I am listening to the news. |
| b) Are you listening to music? | 2) No. they are watching TV. |
| c) Is John playing the guitar? | 3) No. it's eating a bone. |
| d) Are you watching TV? | 4) No. I'm going to school. |
| e) Is she driving a lorry? | 5) Yes, he is. |
| f) Is it snowing outside? | 6) No, it isn't. |
| g) Are your parents sleeping? | 7) No. They are cleaning the windows. |
| h) Is it eating meat? | 8) No. You can turn it off. |
| i) Are you going to the shops? | 9) No. She is driving a car. |
| j) Are the cleaners cleaning the doors? | 10) No. He is drinking coke. |
| k) Is your mother vacuuming the carpets? | 11) Because I don't like it. |
| l) Why aren't you studying history? | 12) No. Because the power is off. |

a.... b.... c.... d.... e.... f.... g.... h.... i.... j.... k.... l....

C- Complete the questions and give short answers as in the example.

Example:

- | <u>Are</u> | | No <u>I'm not</u> |
|------------|--|-------------------|
| 1) _____ | you playing football now? | Yes _____. |
| 2) _____ | John and Marry sitting in the park? | Yes _____. |
| 3) _____ | the television working? | No _____. |
| 4) _____ | the children talking on the phone? | No _____. |
| 5) _____ | Sandra dancing at the disco? | Yes _____. |
| 6) _____ | your mother cooking breakfast at the moment? | No _____. |
| | you and your friend playing the guitar? | |

D- Answer the following questions as in the example.

Example:

Are you listening to pop music or classical music?

I'm listening to classical music.

1) Is Marry sleeping or resting in the room?

2) Are the students taking an examination or a quiz?

3) Are they crying or laughing?

4) Is your teacher going to the cinema or theatre?

5) Is he studying English or Turkish?

6) Are you wearing black or grey trousers?

☹ I lost my pen. I am searching it.

☺ I lost my pen. I am searching for it.



We use "search for something".

E- Rewrite the question in Present Continuous Tense as in the example.

Example:

What / you / buy ?

What are you buying?

- 1) Why / they / look for / you?
- 2) Why / you / cry?
- 3) Where / your aunt / go / now?
- 4) When / you / go / home?
- 5) Who / teach / you / English?
- 6) Who / you / wait for?
- 7) Where / the children / play?

F- Ask question for the underlined words.

- 1) The tourists are visiting the Topkapı Palace at the moment.

a- _____

b- _____

- 2) They are opening their umbrella because it is raining

a- _____

b- _____

- 3) I am listening to Ebru Gündeş at the moment

a- _____

b- _____

- 4) My friend is reading Shakespeare this week

a- _____

b- _____

G- Ask questions for the answers as in the example.

Example:

What is Ayça cleaning?

Ayça is cleaning the table

- 1) _____ ? My father is drinking tea.
- 2) _____ ? They are studying now.
- 3) _____ ? I am listening to Zerrin Özer.
- 4) _____ ? Amanda is sitting next to Martin
- 5) _____ ? The teacher is explaining the subject.
- 6) _____ ? Samantha is playing tennis now.
- 7) _____ ? Ender is cleaning the board now.
- 8) _____ ? They are waiting at the bus stop.
- 9) _____ ? Bora is buying two cassettes.
- 10) _____ ? He is organizing the festival.

☹ The new subject is related with the previous subject.

☺ The new subject is related to the previous subject.



We use "related to him, them, English, etc".

H- Put the following words into correct order and rewrite them in the Present Cont. Tense.

1) who / TV / watch / the match / ? / on /

2) lake / they / swim / at present / in / the/.

3) teacher / our / wear / tie / red / today / not / a /.

4) wife / his / apple / cook / pie / kitchen / in / an /.

5) the ambulance / the patient / take / hospital / another / to /.

6) friends / play / my / cards / at / café / now /.

7) where / they / ? / tennis / play /

8) where / Ebru / Fulya / and / do / now / homework / their / ? /

9) I / children / take / the / to / cinema / the / now /

10) everybody / watch / on / football / the / match / TV /

11) where / they / picnic / a / have / now / ? /

12) who / talk / your mother / to / garden / the / in / ? /

13) Ömer / think / example / an / the / moment / at /

14) the / young boy / study / lesson / his / now /

I- Complete the text about Lisa and Mary. Use the present continuous.

write think make sing drink work ring ask stand listen sit have read talk

09.30 a.m. Mary is in her office. She _____ some mails and _____ her replies. Her friend, Lisa _____ some tea. She _____ a song.

10.00 a.m. Mary and Lisa _____ their tea. Lisa _____ about the seminars, but Mary _____ to her. She _____ about her new boy friend. They _____ at the moment; they _____ their coffee break.

10.30 a.m. The telephone _____ and that is the end of their break. Now it's back to work.

10.35 a.m. Mary _____ at her table. She _____ next to the window and _____ some questions to a customer.

☹ Your house is not similar with their house.

☺ Your house is not similar to their house.



We always use "your car, pen, suit, etc similar to".

CLAUSES OF REASON

because, because of / due to / as / since / the reason for.

We use clauses of reason to combine sentences and to explain the reason of an event.

Examples:

Since / as it got darker, children went home.

She didn't go jogging *because* she injured her ankle.

The police stopped all the cars *because of* snow.

The police stopped all the cars *due to* the snow.

The reason for her failure was that she couldn't understand the questions.

EXERCISE

A- Rewrite the sentences with the clause of reason in brackets.

1) I didn't pay the bill. I didn't have enough money. (because)

2) We couldn't swim. It was cold. (because of)

3) The school boy missed the bus. He was late. (as)

4) I can not hear you. There is a lot of noise. (due to)

5) He had a lot of girlfriends. He was very handsome. (as)

6) It was very foggy. The plane couldn't land. (since)

7) She couldn't get the job. She couldn't speak any foreign languages. (the reason why)

8) The footballers were very happy. They won the cup. (due to)

9) I can not go to the party. My parents didn't allow me. (because)

10) They couldn't connect the internet. The lines were very busy. (as)

11) They couldn't catch the plane. There was a heavy traffic. (because of)

12) They don't know many people here. They have just moved here. (since)

☹ We are sure from our students' honesty.

☺ We are sure of our students' honesty.



We use "sure of him, her, Ahmet's talent etc.".

PRESENT CONTINUOUS FOR FUTURE

When we talk about future arrangements we can use Present Continuous for Future. When we use Present Continuous for Future we are sure that our arrangements will happen.

Examples:

Tomorrow is my birthday. I'm having a birthday party.

What are you doing tomorrow? I'm studying lesson.

EXERCISES

A- Put the verbs in brackets in Present Continuous tense.

- 1) Murat _____ (go) to Eskişehir next week.
- 2) We _____ (work) on Saturday.
- 3) I'd like to come to your party but I _____ (visit) my grandparents tomorrow.
- 4) They can't come to your house at 6:00. They _____ (study) lesson at that time.
- 5) Catherine and Mark _____ (get engaged) next month.
- 6) What time _____ they _____ (leave) for London tomorrow?

B- This is the time table of a group of tourists in Istanbul. Ask and answer what they are doing and when they are doing it, as in the example.

Sunday	Monday	Tuesday	Wednesday	Thursday	Friday
Visit Topkapı Palace and Blue Mosque	Have breakfast at Yellow Pavilion. Visit Dolmabahçe Palace.	Visit Naval Museum. Visit Military Museum	Go to Galata Tower to watch belly dance.	Go Bosphorus Tour by boat.	Go shopping in Covered Bazaar

Example:

They are visiting Topkapı Palace and Blue Mosque on Sunday.

- 1) _____.
- 2) _____.
- 3) _____.
- 4) _____.
- 5) _____.
- 6) _____.

☹ Last year, we were tired from chicken soup.

☺ Last year, we were tired of chicken soup.



We use "tired of school, tea, school uniform, etc."

SIMPLE PRESENT OR PRESENT CONTINUOUS TENSE

EXERCISES

A- Put the words in brackets in the correct tense and complete the dialogue.

Dave : What _____ (you / do) ?
Mary : I _____ my project.
Dave : What _____ (be) the project about?
Mary : It _____ (be) about environment.
Dave : How often _____ you _____ (do) projects?
Mary : Once a month.
Dave : _____ you _____ (love) doing projects?
Mary : Yes, I love it very much.

B- Write the sentences using Present Simple or Present Continuous

- 1) The students / basketball / play / in the garden / at the moment /
_____.
- 2) I / get up / at 7 o'clock / usually / weekdays / on /
_____.
- 3) We / at home / have / lunch / always / but / we / a restaurant / have / lunch / today / at /
_____.
- 4) It / now / rain / it / a / day / rainy / . /
_____.
- 5) American / students / the / watch / film / an / at the moment /
_____.

C- Complete the following sentences in correct tense

- 1) I'm very tired. I _____ (want / go) bed now.
- 2) What _____ your mother _____ (do) in the kitchen at the moment?
- 3) How much _____ it _____ (cost) to paint your house?
- 4) _____ you _____ (like) my new jeans?
- 5) What _____ your father _____ (do)? He is an engineer.
- 6) What time _____ your father _____ (come back) from work?
- 7) We _____ (go) to the cinema after school today.
- 8) My friend _____ (go) on holiday every summer.
- 9) What _____ (think) of this book? I think it's fantastic!

☹ Yesterday we were tired of playing basketball.

☺ Yesterday we were tired with playing basketball.



We use "tired with playing, running, studying, working, etc."

COUNTABLE / UNCOUNTABLE NOUNS

Countable nouns are things we can count. They can be singular or plural. We can use a/an with them.

Examples:

I have got *a lot of* English books.

My son has got *a* bike.

Uncountable nouns are things we can not count. They are generally singular. We can not use a/an with them.

Examples:

I have got *some* money.

There isn't *any* water in the glass.

We can use “some, any, many, a few” with plural countable nouns.

Examples:

The rich man has got *a few* cars.

There are *many* students in the class.

There are *some* apples in the basket.

She didn't buy *any* magazines.

We can use “some, any, much, a little” with uncountable nouns.

Examples:

There is *some* cold water in the fridge.

There isn't *any* butter on the shelf.

We didn't have *much* work to do.

We have *a little* rice left.

We can not make uncountable nouns plural but to show different amounts we can use different units with them.

Examples:

A loaf of bread.

Two loaves of bread.

Two bottles of water.

Five litres of oil.

We can use some nouns as both countable or uncountable nouns.

A tomato

some tomato

A potato

some potato

An egg

some egg

A noise

much noise

A hair

some hair



He ate two toasts.



He ate two pieces of toast.



Toast is an uncountable noun.

EXERCISES

A- Make the following units plural as in the example.

Example:

a piece of cake.

three pieces of cake.

- 1) A bunch of flowers _____.
- 2) A jar of honey _____.
- 3) A packet of macaroni _____.
- 4) A litre of oil _____.
- 5) A bottle of shampoo _____.
- 6) A glass of water _____.
- 7) A slice of bread _____.
- 8) A tube of toothpaste _____.
- 9) A bar of chocolate _____.
- 10) A cup of tea _____.
- 11) A bowl of soup _____.
- 12) A lump of meat _____.
- 13) A carton of orange juice _____.
- 14) A sheet of paper _____.
- 15) A bag of sugar _____.

B- Fill in the blanks with suitable units.

- 1) I drink _____ coke everyday.
- 2) There is _____ biscuits in her bag.
- 3) My son drinks _____ water everyday.
- 4) We have got _____ meat in the fridge.
- 5) There is _____ chalk on the table.
- 6) I gave my wife _____ flowers for her birthday.
- 7) Dilek has got _____ chocolate in her hand.
- 8) There is _____ yoghurt in the fridge.
- 9) They bought _____ oil yesterday.
- 10) I bought _____ matches.
- 11) She can drink _____ coke.
- 12) Her husband eats _____ bread at breakfast.
- 13) Some people drink _____ hot water when they get up.
- 14) I prefer _____ soup to _____ tea in the mornings.



They bought a lot of new furnitures for their new house.



They bought a lot of new furniture for their new house.



"Furniture" is an uncountable noun.

ANY / SOME

“Some” and “Any” mean “a certain number or amount”. We use both of them before plural countable nouns.

Some teachers *Any* books.

“Any” is used with negative sentences and questions.

Are there *any* students in the classroom? There aren't *any* buses to Ankara.

“Some” is used with affirmative sentences.

There are *some* books on the table.

EXERCISES

A- Change the following sentences as in the example.

Example:

There are *some* students in the school yard.

(-) There aren't *any* students in the school yard.

(?) Are there *any* students in the school yard?

1) There are some posters on the wall.

(?) _____.

(-) _____.

2) There aren't any cinemas in my town.

(+) _____.

(?) _____.

3) Are there any letters in the post box?

(+) _____.

(-) _____.

B- Answer the following questions as in the example.

Example:

Are there *any* computers in your room?

Yes, there is one.

No, there aren't *any* computers in my room

1) Are there any pictures on the walls in your room?

_____.

_____.

2) Are there any parks near your house?

_____.

_____.

3) Are there any cassettes in your bag?

_____.

_____.

☹ The teacher warned the students for speaking a lot.

☺ The teacher warned the students against speaking a lot.



We use “warn against” for people.

A FEW / A LITTLE

We use “a few” with plural countable nouns.

It means “a small number” and it has a positive meaning.

There are *a few* eggs in the fridge.

We use “a little” with uncountable nouns.

It means “a small amount” and it has a positive meaning.

There is *a little* water in the glass.

EXERCISES

A- Complete the following sentences using “a few”, “a little”.

- 1) I bought _____ books at the weekend.
- 2) _____ students are doing their homework in the classroom.
- 3) My father only takes _____ sugar with his tea.
- 4) There is only _____ jam left in the refrigerator.
- 5) There are _____ new words in this unit.
- 6) Terry had _____ money so he bought only _____ bars of chocolate.
- 7) I smoke only _____ cigarettes a day.
- 8) I've only got _____ time to finish this project.
- 9) We had _____ guests from Amasya last week.
- 10) Did you take any photos in the village last year? Yes I took _____ but they are not clear.
- 11) Have you got any money? Yes, I've only got _____ money.
- 12) Was there any food in your bag? Yes there was _____.
- 13) Hurry up! I have got _____ time. I must leave immediately.
- 14) There are _____ tourists in the hotel today.
- 15) Derya drank _____ milk last night.
- 16) There were _____ girls in the car.
- 17) I will call you only _____ minutes later.
- 18) The cook needs _____ more onions.
- 19) I can't speak German but I can speak _____ English.
- 20) Our teacher has got _____ test CDs in his bag.

☹ We write letters with ink.

😊 We write letters in ink.



We use “write in ink, chalk, etc.”

B- Find the mistakes in the following sentences and rewrite them as in the example.

Example:

My son has got a ~~little~~ friends.

My son has got *a few* friends.

1) My students have got a little English books with them.

2) There is a few snow on Kaçkar Mountain this year.

3) This is a small town. There are only a little shops.

4) We have got a little chairs in our room.

5) There is a few chocolate on the cake.

6) I can solve a little problems in one minute.

FEW / LITTLE

Few means nearly “no” .

Examples:

There were few costumers in the supermarket.

We have few coloured pens.

When I was in hospital, few people visited me.

Little means nearly “no” or “nothing”.

Examples:

There is little water in the bottle.

They have little butter in the fridge.

I had little money after the fun-fair.

C- Complete the following sentences using “few/ a few/ little/ a little”.

1) There was _____ coke in the bottle. It wasn't enough for us.

2) Carol answered _____ letters yesterday.

3) Students can't practice their English, because they have _____ opportunity.

4) We couldn't finish the work, because there were _____ workers.

5) I can't buy this shirt. I need _____ more money.

6) John has _____ mails in his mailbox.

☹ My father's job is doctor.

☺ My father's a doctor.



We don't use “job”, when we tell the professions.

IMPERATIVES

We use imperatives

A- To express a command, a warning or a request. We don't have subject in imperatives.

Examples:

Open the door

Close the windows

Sit down.

B- We use "don't" in front of the verb to make the imperative negative.

Examples:

Don't open the door

Don't close the window

Don't sit down

C- We can use "please" to make the imperative more polite. "Please" can be used at the beginning or at the end. It can be used with affirmative and negative imperatives.

Examples:

Please, open the door

Don't close the window, *please*.

EXERCISES

A- Complete the following sentences as in example above.

- | | |
|--|--|
| 1) _____ run in the corridor. | 6) _____ keep your desk tidy. |
| 2) _____ talk to your friends. | 7) _____ bite your nails. |
| 3) _____ listen to your teacher carefully. | 8) _____ be polite with the people. |
| 4) _____ eat or drink something. | 9) _____ be rude to your friends. |
| 5) _____ take notes carefully. | 10) _____ visit older people in Bayrams. |

B- Match the following sentences.

- | | |
|-----------------------------------|-----------------------------------|
| a) I'm very hungry. | 1) Don't go out. |
| b) I've got an exam tomorrow. | 2) Take an aspirin. |
| c) It's very cold here. | 3) Eat something. |
| d) I've got a headache. | 4) Buy some from the supermarket. |
| e) It's raining heavily. | 5) Take him to the dentist. |
| f) There isn't any bread at home. | 6) Drive carefully |
| g) My father has got a toothache. | 7) Don't sit down. |
| h) The road is icy. | 8) Study your lesson. |
| i) The coke is very cold. | 9) Put on a jumper. |
| j) The bank is still wet. | 10) Don't drink. |

a.... b.... c.... d.... e.... f.... g.... h.... i.... j....

☹️ Remind your father the shopping list in the morning.

☺️ Remind your father of the shopping list in the morning.



After "remind" we always use "of".

THE SIMPLE PAST TENSE OF VERB TO BE

Affirmative

I was
You were
He was
She was
It was
We were
They were

Negative

I was not / wasn't
You were not / weren't
He was not / wasn't
She was not / wasn't
It was not / wasn't
We were not / weren't
They were not / weren't

Question

Was I?
Were you?
Was he?
Was she?
Was it?
Were we?
Were they?

Example:

I am 36 years now. I *was* 35 last year.

They are at home now. They *were* in Istanbul in the morning.

Kate and Jim *were* at the cinema last night.

EXERCISES

A- Make sentences using the past form of "to be".

1) The students / at school / yesterday / ? /

2) It / rainy / at the weekend / ? /

3) Your friend / ill / on / Monday /

4) She / at the disco / on Sunday night /

5) You and your wife / at the cafe / at 6:00 /

6) She / at home / in the afternoon /

7) They / late / for school / yesterday /

8) You / in Ankara / last year /

9) The shop / open / at the weekend /

10) Ago / angry / very / two hours / he /

11) busy / ten / ago / the lines / minutes

12) Liverpool / last / champion / year / the / in / league / Premier / the

☹ My car's colour is white.

☺ My car's white.



We don't use "colour" when we tell the colour of something.

B- Complete the sentences with “was /wasn’t”, “were / weren’t”.

- 1) There _____ ten students in the classroom.
- 2) I _____ at home at 1:00. I _____ out.
- 3) It _____ cold yesterday but it _____ cold at the weekend.
- 4) Tim and Jim _____ at the disco last night.
- 5) Where _____ you ten years ago?
- 6) _____ your parents at the party yesterday?
- 7) My teacher _____ very pleased with me.
- 8) It _____ a fantastic gig.
- 9) My dad _____ in Istanbul last week. He was in Yalova.
- 10) Your sister _____ at the bookshop in the morning.

C- Make questions and give answers as in the example.

Was Were	the film	hardworking?	Yes, it was. No, it wasn't. Yes, they were. No, They weren't.
	the book	interesting?	
	the streets	exciting?	
	the school	clean?	
	the hotel	cheap?	
	the food	delicious?	
	the rooms	comfortable?	
	the dress	fashionable?	
	the cars	fast?	
	the students	crowded?	
	the audience	happy	

Example:

Were the cars fast?

Yes, they were.

- | | |
|------------|--------|
| 1) _____? | _____. |
| 2) _____? | _____. |
| 3) _____? | _____. |
| 4) _____? | _____. |
| 5) _____? | _____. |
| 6) _____? | _____. |
| 7) _____? | _____. |
| 8) _____? | _____. |
| 9) _____? | _____. |
| 10) _____? | _____. |

☹ She's chatting with her friends.

☺ She's chatting to her friends.



We use “chat to someone”.

D- Answer the following questions

1) Where were your parents at the weekend?

2) Why were you late for the class?

3) What was the weather like yesterday?

4) Where were you last summer?

5) Who was the Prime Minister two years ago?

6) What was the name of your primary school teacher?

7) Who were you with at the party?

8) When was your best friend's birthday?

9) What colour was your teacher's shirt yesterday?

10) Who was the first President of the Turkish Republic?

11) Who was the first man on the moon?

12) Which team was the last champion in the Turkish League?

13) Why was your friend sad yesterday?

14) Where was your first house?

15) When was the World War I?

E- Put the words in the correct order to make questions. Then, match the questions to the answers.

- a) was / with / your sister / who / at the party?
- b) the meeting / at/ were / teachers / how many / there?
- c) last night / you / at / home / were / alone?
- d) open / was / supermarket / the / on Sunday?
- e) were / much / tickets / the / how / Bodrum / to?

- 1) No, it was closed.
- 2) eighty-three.
- 3) 10 NTL
- 4) No, I was out.
- 5) with aunt Clara.

a.... b.... c.... d.... e....

☹ They filled the tank of oil.

☺ They filled the tank with oil.



We use "fill with water, juice, gas, etc."

THE SIMPLE PAST TENSE

Affirmative

I played
You played
He played
She played
It played
We played
They played

Negative

I did not play
You did not play
He did not play
She did not play
It did not play
We did not play
They did not play
(* **did not** = **didn't**)

Question

Did I play?
Did you play?
Did he play?
Did she play?
Did it play?
Did we play?
Did they play?

We use The Simple Past Tense for

A) A completed action in the past at a definite time.

Example:

I *started* school in 1983

B) A past action when we ask or give time.

Example:

When did you finish your homework?

When did she go there?

C) Past Habits.

Example:

I *always played* football when I was young.

They *always went* to school on foot.

SPELLING

1) We add **-ied** to the verb ending in “y” following a consonant and drop “y”.

Examples:

study – *studied*

cry- *cried*

2) We double the consonant with the verbs of one syllable with one vowel and ends in a single consonant.

Examples:

stop – *stopped*

travel - *travelled*

3) We use past form of irregular verbs in positive sentences.

Examples:

go – went

buy – bought

come – came



Two people dead in the accident.



Two people died in the accident.



“Dead” is an adjective, but “die” is a verb.

TIME EXPRESSIONS

last	week	ten days	ago	in	1976	on	Sunday.....
	month	five years			summer	at	ten o'clock
	year	two weeks			June		after
	summer	two hours			the morning		before
	January	a month			the afternoon	at	the weekend
	Sunday				the evening		
	semester						

EXERCISES

A- Complete the following sentences in The Simple Past Tense.

- 1) The student _____ (take) an exam yesterday.
- 2) My family _____ (move) to Istanbul in 1971.
- 3) They _____ (watch) a good film on TV yesterday evening.
- 4) Mr. Çakmak _____ (buy) a new car last week.
- 5) The workers _____ (finish) the work at 6 o'clock.
- 6) The little girl _____ (cry) all night because she _____ (have) a headache.
- 7) She _____ (not forget) to buy present for her friend's birthday.
- 8) It _____ (be) sunny yesterday. It _____ (not rain).
- 9) After school, the students _____ (not play) basketball in the hall.
- 10) Ayşegül _____ (get up) late and she _____ (not catch) the bus.
- 11) The bus _____ (not stop) at the bus stop in the morning.
- 12) After the earthquake, they _____ (rent) a house in the village.
- 13) _____ they _____ (play) football after lunch?
- 14) _____ your friend _____ (stay) at a hotel in Adana?

B- Rewrite the following sentences in The Simple Past Tense.

- 1) My son goes to the cinema every weekend. (last weekend)
_____.
- 2) It rains in Rize everyday. (yesterday)
_____.
- 3) They go to their hometown every summer. (last summer)
_____.

☹ The match started ten minutes before.

☺ The match started ten minutes ago.



We use "ago" when we talk about past events in relation to the present.

4) Mehmet has a shower every evening. (yesterday evening)

5) Some birds fly to the south every winter. (last winter)

6) The football matches start at 7:00 pm. (on Sunday)

7) I brush my teeth every morning. (this morning)

8) They clean their garden every spring. (last spring)

9) My father listens to the news on the radio every hour. (at 10:00 am.)

10) I love playing football (when I was a child)

C- Complete the following sentences using the verbs in The Simple Past Tense.

1) I _____ to work by car yesterday. (go)

2) The girls _____ with their friends at the weekend. (meet)

3) My mother _____ when she was 57 years old (die).

4) We _____ a nice time at the party last night. (have)

5) I _____ late this morning and I _____ the bus. (get up / miss)

6) Ayşe _____ very hard and _____ the exam. (study / pass)

7) Sarah _____ her homework early and _____ to music. (finish / listen)

8) Yasin _____ to a new job last month. (start)

9) The film _____ at 10:00 and it _____ at 12:00. (start / finish)

10) Yasemin _____ a new pair of jeans yesterday. (buy)

D- Ask questions and give short answers as in the examples.

	Bülent	Aşlı
clean the car	✓	X
finish his/her homework	✓	X
tidy his/her room	✓	✓
help his/her father	X	✓
play tennis	X	X
watch TV	✓	✓
listen to music	✓	✓

☹ At the end, they finished the examination.

😊 In the end, they finished the examination.



In the end means, "finally" or "last".

Example:

Did Bülent clean the car?
Did Aslı clean the car?

Yes, he did
No, she didn't

E- Choose the best alternative and answer the questions.

- 1) Did you buy a cassette or a CD? *I bought a CD.*
- 2) Did you come to school by bus or on foot? _____
- 3) Did your friend watch TV or listen to music last night? _____
- 4) Did your father come home early or late? _____
- 5) Did your friend buy a book or a magazine? _____
- 6) Did you finish your homework before or after dinner? _____

F- Ask question for the underlined words as in the example.

Example:

They arrived home at ten o'clock yesterday

- a- Who arrived home late yesterday?
- b- What time did they arrive home yesterday?
- c- When did they arrive home?

- 1) She was late for school this morning, because she missed the bus.
a- _____
b- _____
- 2) I started teaching English in 1987.
a- _____
b- _____
- 3) I watched a good programme about animals on TV.
a- _____
- 4) The director went to Yalova for a conference.
a- _____
b- _____
c- _____

☹ She suggested to meet at the cafe.

☺ She suggested meeting at the cafe.



We use "suggest doing something".

5) A lot of people went to Italy for the match.

a- _____

b- _____

6) The reporter bought a new camera from Japan.

a- _____

b- _____

7) She bought the expensive camera.

a- _____

8) My daughter learned a little English when she was four.

a- _____

b- _____

c- _____

9) The President went to America twice last year.

a- _____

b- _____

c- _____

d- _____

10) I bought my new car two years ago.

a- _____

b- _____

11) Atatürk founded the Turkish Republic in 1923.

a- _____

b- _____

c- _____

G- Answer the following questions.

1) When did you start this school?

2) Where did your friend go for summer holiday?

3) Why did your father come home late?

4) How long did you study yesterday?

5) How often did your mother go to the cinema when she was young?

☹ The patients thanked to the doctors and nurses.

☺ The patients thanked the doctors and nurses.



We use "thank someone".

6) How many story books did you read last year?

7) What time did you go to bed last night?

8) How much money did you spend at the weekend?

9) Where did you go on a holiday last summer?

10) Why did your father go to the bank last week?

H- Complete the following dialogue.

Murat: Hello, Ahmet. _____?

Ahmet: I was in Istanbul.

Murat: _____?

Ahmet: I visited my grandparents.

Murat: _____?

Ahmet: We went there at 8 in the morning.

Murat: _____?

Ahmet: No, we didn't. We went by car.

Murat: _____?

Ahmet: We stayed there for 6 hours.

Murat: _____?

Ahmet: We came back about 5 pm.

I- Complete the passage with the best word or phrase from the list below.

(1) _____ month, I went to Antalya for two days. I went (2) _____ my friends. We went there by bus. We (3) _____ a taxi from the bus station to (4) _____ hotel in Konyaalti. The weather was very (5) _____ so we walked a lot.

On the first (6) _____, we went sightseeing. We (7) _____ the historical places in the city centre. The next day, we went to the Düden and Kurşunlu waterfalls.

On the first evening we had (8) _____ in a restaurant. On the second evening, went to (9) _____ a show in Side. It was fantastic!

- | | | | | |
|----|--------------|--------------|-----------|-----------|
| 1. | a. next | b. following | c. last | d. that |
| 2. | a. to | b. with | c. for | d. on |
| 3. | a. had | b. cleaned | c. bought | d. took |
| 4. | a. our | b. their | c. her | d. your |
| 5. | a. foggy | b. nice | c. awful | d. stormy |
| 6. | a. month | b. minute | c. hour | d. day |
| 7. | a. visited | b. met | c. spent | d. tidied |
| 8. | a. breakfast | b. meal | c. dinner | d. lunch |
| 9. | a. play | b. see | c. listen | d. do |

☹ Some students are not good in chemistry.

😊 Some students are not good at chemistry.



We use "good at science, football, speaking, etc.".

CLAUSES OF RESULT

as a result / consequently / therefore / so... (that) / such ... (that) / as a consequence

We use result clauses to combine sentences and to express the result of something.

Examples:

All the snakes were killed. Mice invaded city.

All the snakes were killed *as a result* mice invaded city.

I think *therefore* I am.

It was very cold. Not many people went to the match.

It was very cold yesterday. *Consequently*, not many people went to the match.

The teacher's voice was low. I couldn't hear her.

The teacher's voice was *so* low *that* I couldn't hear her.

It was a delicious meal. Everybody thanked to the cook.

It was *such* a delicious meal *that* that everybody thanked the cook.

EXERCISE

A- Rewrite the following sentences with a suitable clause of result.

1) They got up very early. They finished the work early.

2) The man spent much money on holiday. He can't buy the tickets.

3) There were some very angry people in front of the disco. The police couldn't relax them.

4) He studied very hard. He answered all the questions correctly.

5) She was a very beautiful girl. Many people offered her to marry.

6) The company was very pleased with him. They rewarded him at the end.

7) I was very tired. I went to bed very early.

☹ Some students are weak at chemistry.

☺ Some students are weak in chemistry.



We use "weak in grammar, tennis, science, etc."

BE GOING TO FUTURE

Affirmative

I am going to run fast
 You are going to run fast
 He is going to run fast
 She is going to run fast
 It is going to run fast
 We are going to run fast
 They are going to run fast

Negative

I am not going to run fast
 You aren't going to run fast
 He isn't going to run fast
 She isn't going to run fast
 It isn't going to run fast
 We aren't going to run fast
 They aren't going to run fast

Question

Am I going to run fast?
 Are you going to run fast?
 Is he going to run fast?
 Is she going to run fast?
 Is it going to run fast?
 Are we going to run fast?
 Are they going to run fast?

We use Be Going To

A) To express the subject's intention or plan to do an action in future.

Examples:

I am *going to* give an examination tomorrow.

They *are going to* leave at 4:30.

My friend won the lottery. He says he *is going to* buy a new house.

B) To predict the future, using information we have now.

Examples:

I've drunk too much. I'm *going to* have a sore throat.

Look at the black clouds. It's *going to* rain.

It's 8:00! You are *going to* miss the bus.

C) To talk about a fact in the future.

Examples:

My son is *going to* be three next month.

The school is *going to* finish on 14 June.

I'm *going to* celebrate my 40th birthday next week.

TIME EXPRESSIONS

next	Sunday	two days	later	soon	tomorrow
	week	three weeks			
	month	two months			
	year	three years			
	Spring	an hour			
	Christmas	ten minutes			
	weekend				

☹ I am not interested with football.

☺ I am not interested in football.



We use "interested in music, sport, cinema, etc."

EXERCISES

A- Complete the following sentences in “be going to future” using the verbs in the brackets.

- 1) We _____ (watch) a film on TV tonight.
- 2) They _____ (build) a new sports centre in the town.
- 3) My son _____ (not take) an examination tomorrow.
- 4) The sky is blue. It _____ (not rain) today.
- 5) Banu _____ (attend) fifth grade next year.
- 6) We _____ (invite) our friends to dinner tomorrow.
- 7) You _____ (speak) English at the end of this year.
- 8) Mr. Karagöz _____ (leave) for Bayburt next month.
- 9) The students _____ (have) an exam tomorrow.
- 10) My cousin _____ (join) the army two months later.

B- This is Kim and Jill’s weekend plan. Complete the sentences as in the example.

	Kim	Jill	You
Listen to music	✓	✓	
Visit her grandparents	✓	✓	
Help mother	✓	X	
Watch TV	X	✓	
Paint the room	X	✓	
Do homework	✓	✓	
Have a party	✓	X	
Have a picnic	X	X	

Example:

Kim is *going to* listen to music, visit her grandparents, help her mother, do her homework and have a party but she isn’t *going to* watch TV, paint her room or have a picnic at the weekend.

- 1) Jill _____

_____.
- 2) I _____

_____.

- ☹ The students are leaving to school trip.
☺ The students are leaving for school trip.



We use “leave for places, cinema, match, etc.”.

C- Complete the sentences in “be going to future” using the verbs in the box.

attend	X 2	stay	get married	study	watch
visit		take	have	spend	

- 1) My son is ill. He _____ in bed all day.
- 2) Some students _____ a summer school in Muğla.
- 3) Sibel _____ law at university.
- 4) I'm sure. They _____ soon.
- 5) We _____ Fenerbahçe match this evening.
- 6) The principal _____ a seminar in Erdek next week.
- 7) My friend is ill. I _____ him in the hospital.
- 8) Millions of students _____ the university exam in June.
- 9) The new couple _____ their honeymoon in a luxury hotel.
- 10) They _____ a baby next month.

D- Answer the following questions.

- 1) Your hands are dirty. What are you going to do?
_____.
- 2) You are very hungry. What are you going to do?
_____.
- 3) Your father is very tired. What is he going to do?
_____.
- 4) Your friend invited you to her birthday party. What are you going to buy?
_____.
- 5) Your parents are going on holiday. What are they going to take with them?
_____.
- 6) You have two exams next week. What are you going to do?
_____.
- 7) What are you going to do when you leave school?
_____.
- 8) Who are you going to invite to your birthday party?.
_____.
- 9) When is your school going to finish?
_____.
- 10) The walls of your house are very dirty. What is your father going to do?
_____.

☹ My niece is married with a policeman.

😊 My niece is married to a policeman.



We use “married to a doctor, a handsome boy, a rich man, etc.”.

E- Ask questions for the underlined words.

1) Catherine is going to buy a new camera next week.

- a- Who _____ ?
b- What _____ ?
c- When _____ ?

2) They are going to spend their holiday in Marmaris.

- a- Who _____ ?
b- What _____ ?
c- Where _____ ?

3) My father is going to help me with my homework.

- a- Whose _____ ?
b- Who _____ ?
c- What _____ ?

4) The President is going to stay in the USA for a week.

- a- Who _____ ?
b- Where _____ ?
c- How long _____ ?

5) They are going to spend a lot of money for the decoration of their new house.

- a- Who _____ ?
b- How much _____ ?
c- What _____ ?

F- Complete the following questions using be going to future.

1) Sally: what / David/ do? _____ ?

Terry: Paint the living room walls.

Sally: what colour / he / paint them? _____ ?

Terry: Purple

2) Seda : what / Kemal / do / after university? _____ ?

Ceyda : First, he is going to finish the military service.

Seda : how long / he / be away? _____ ?

Ceyda : About twelve months.

☹ Alpay plays in the school team.

☺ Alpay plays for the school team.



We use "play for a team".

MAY / MIGHT

We use “may” and “might” to talk about possible events in future.

Examples:

It *may* rain tomorrow.

I haven't decided yet. I *may* go to Bodrum.

We can use “may” and “might” in negative forms.

Examples:

I *may not come* to the cinema with you. We may go shopping.

They *might not* come to your wedding ceremony. Their son is ill.

It's generally no problem whether you use “may” or “might”.

Example:

We can say “They may help you” or “They might help you”.

If the event is not real, we use “might”.

Examples:

If I were there, I *might* solve the problem.

If she came earlier, she *might* help us.

EXERCISES

A- Complete the following sentences with “may” or “might”.

- 1) What are you wearing for the party? _____ black suit.
- 2) Be careful. The road is icy. _____ fall down.
- 3) They went to the party. I didn't know. I _____ go.
- 4) Don't let the children come into the room. They _____ tear books.
- 5) The minister _____ come to our city next week.

B- Answer the following questions with “may”.

- 1) Where are you going this weekend?

_____.

- 2) When are you going on holiday?

_____.

- 3) What are your parents doing tomorrow?

_____.

- 4) Who will teach you English next year?

_____.



People criticised the authorities not to take any precaution.



People criticised the authorities for not taking any precaution.



We use “criticised someone for doing / not doing something”.

MANY / MUCH / HOW MANY / HOW MUCH

“Much” is used with uncountable nouns.

It is used in questions and negatives. Much refers to quantity.

Example:

I haven't got *much* time. Have you got *much* time?

“Many” is used before plural countable nouns.

It is used in questions and negatives. Many refers to number.

Example:

There aren't *many* shops in my town. Are there *many* shops in your town?

EXERCISES

A- Complete the following sentences using “many”, “much”.

- 1) We are foreigners. We don't have _____ friends here.
- 2) My father doesn't carry _____ money in his pocket.
- 3) Have you got _____ homework to do?
- 4) Are there _____ people at the birthday party?
- 5) Did you read _____ English books?
- 6) There isn't _____ bread left.
- 7) Has your father got _____ time to clean his car?
- 8) There are _____ fast food shops on Çark Street.
- 9) There isn't _____ rain in our town this year.
- 10) Are there _____ trees in your garden?

How much is used with uncountable nouns to ask the quantity.

Example:

How much money do you need?

How much sugar do you add this cake?

How much time do you need to cook the dinner?

How many is used with countable nouns to ask the number.

Example:

How many brothers have you got?

How many people work in this factory?

How many e-mails do you receive a week?



Some animals are in danger to extinction.



Some animals are in danger of extinction.



We use “in danger of”.

B- Complete the following questions using “how many” or “how much”.

- 1) _____ teachers are there in your school?
- 2) _____ money does your father earn?
- 3) _____ tea do you drink a day?
- 4) _____ books did you read last year?
- 5) _____ time do you need?
- 6) _____ letters are there in Grammarline?
- 7) _____ lines are there in a page?
- 8) _____ time do you need for that?
- 9) _____ water does a person need a day?

C- Answer the following questions.

- 1) How many cities are there in Turkey?
_____.
- 2) How many new words do you learn a week?
_____.
- 3) How many brothers and sisters have you got?
_____.
- 4) How many people are there in your house?
_____.
- 5) How much money do you spend a day?
_____.

D- Match the following questions and answers.

- | | |
|---|---|
| a) How many students are there in your class? | 1) There are 7 days in a week. |
| b) How many children have they got? | 2) They have got three children |
| c) How many days are there in a week? | 3) There is some milk in the jug. |
| d) How many months are there in a year? | 4) He drinks ten cups of tea a day. |
| e) How many minutes are there in an hour? | 5) There are 60 minutes in an hour. |
| f) How much milk is there in the jug? | 6) There isn't much cheese in the fridge. |
| g) How much tea does your father drink? | 7) There are four plates on the table. |
| h) How much cheese is there in the fridge? | 8) There are twelve months in a year. |
| i) How many plates are there on the table? | 9) There is a lot of fruit juice in the bottle. |
| j) How much fruit juice is there in the bottle? | 10) There are 30 students in our class. |

a.... b.... c.... d.... e.... f.... g.... h.... i.... j....

☹ The woman gave all the details of the driver.

☺ The woman gave all the detail of the driver.



"Detail" is an uncountable noun.

OBJECT PRONOUNS

Subject Pronouns

I	I help the secretary
You	You help the secretary
He	He helps the secretary
She	She helps the secretary
It	It helps the secretary
You	You help the secretary
We	We help the secretary
They	They help the secretary

Object Pronouns

The secretary helps <u>me</u>	me
The secretary helps <u>you</u>	you
The secretary helps <u>him</u>	him
The secretary helps <u>her</u>	her
The secretary helps <u>it</u>	it
The secretary helps <u>you</u>	you
The secretary helps <u>us</u>	us
The secretary helps <u>them</u>	them

Examples:

The music is too loud. Turn *it* down.

I am very busy. Can you help *me* please?

Banu doesn't watch science-fiction films.

Ayşe is very ill. Take *her* to the hospital.

I never go to disco. I don't like *it*.

She doesn't like *them*.

EXERCISES

A- Rewrite the following sentences using subject and object pronouns.

1) Gül is going to the cinema tomorrow. I'm meeting Gül in front of the cinema.

2) Mr. Dede is carrying a heavy bag. Let's help Mr. Dede.

3) The students study their lessons everyday after school.

4) Mr. Karagöz always asks the students difficult questions.

5) The windows are very dirty and the students are cleaning the windows.

B- Chose the correct word as in the example.

1) They are cleaning *them / they*. The carpets are dirty.

2) I am mending *it / its*. The radio is broken.

3) We love our parents and they love *we / us*.

4) Can you help *I / me* please?

5) They are not coming to party. Don't wait for *them / they*.

6) I am very thirsty. Please bring *I / me* a glass of water.

7) The dog is in the garden. Take *it / its* into the kennel.

8) My friend is ill. I am visiting *she / her* tomorrow.

9) Your shoes are very dirty. Please, clean *they / them*.

10) Can you give *me / I* your pencil?

☹ She described the driver with detail.

😊 She described the driver in detail.



We always use "describe something in detail".

GERUND

Gerund means adding –ing to the verbs.

We use gerund

A) As a noun and subject of the sentence.

Examples:

Learning English is very enjoyable.

Running keeps people fit.

B) In short prohibitions.

Examples:

No *parking*

No *smoking*

No *swimming*.

C) After “go” when it refers to activities.

Examples:

My son goes *fishing* at the weekends.

We go *camping* in the highlands in summer.

D) When there is an immediate preposition after the verb.

Examples:

Semih Saygıner is good at *playing* billiards.

The man was accused of *killing* his friend.

I’m interested in *collecting* old coins.

E) After the verbs “love”, “like”, “hate”, “prefer”, “enjoy”, “dislike”.

Examples:

I *prefer* drinking tea to drinking coke.

The students *hate* taking examinations.

The little boy *likes* drinking milk and eating sweets.

F- After certain verbs.

The most important ones;

avoid – consider – delay – deny – escape – excuse – imagine – finish – forgive

involve – keep– mind – miss – postpone – prevent –remember –resist– risk – stop–

suggest – understand

Examples:

They *finished painting* the walls of the garden.

When the teacher came in, the students *stopped talking*.

I *can’t stand listening* to loud music.

Yesterday, the students *remembered bringing* their books.



I am tired to write examples.



I am tired of writing examples.



We use “tired of” doing something.

EXERCISES

A- Complete the following sentences in gerund.

- 1) My son complains about _____ (have) a lot of work.
- 2) I like _____ (play) football but I don't like _____ (play) badminton.
- 3) In our school, teachers usually _____ (finish / give) lesson at 4: 30.
- 4) Cem _____ (not like/read) science-fiction books but he _____ (like) adventure stories.
- 5) My wife _____ (can not stand / watch) old Turkish films.
- 6) The teacher _____ (keep / teach) after the bell rang.
- 7) _____ (smoke) is bad for everybody but _____ (run) is healthy.
- 8) In April _____ (walk) in the rain is very romantic.
- 9) My friend _____ (learn) _____ (play) computer games.
- 10) My father stopped _____ (work) ten years ago.
- 11) Turkish Airlines stopped _____ (fly) to Urfa last week.
- 12) My friend doesn't like _____ (work) indoors but he likes _____ (work) outdoors.
- 13) I enjoy _____ (drive) on sunny days but I hate _____ (drive) on rainy days.
- 14) The young people go _____ (dance) at the weekends.
- 15) The mayor isn't interested in _____ (build) a new park.

B- Write sentences about Kate and then write about yourself.

	Go to party	Read book	Go to bed early	Do homework
Love	✓			
Like		✓		
Hate				✓
Can't stand			✓	

Kate loves going to parties.

Kate _____.

Kate _____.

Kate _____.

I _____.

I _____.

I _____.

I _____.

☹ I like dancing with pop music.

☺ I like dancing to pop music.



We always use "dance to" a music.

C- Answer the following questions and give true answers.

1) Do you like staying with your grandparents?

2) Which are you good at? Playing football or playing basketball?

3) Do you always remember switching off the lights when you leave the room?

4) Does your father park his car when he sees “no parking” sign?

5) Which one is easier? Climbing mountains or going trekking?

6) Do you like going to bed early and getting up early?

7) When does your mother go shopping?

8) Do you sometimes go dancing with your friends?

9) Are your schoolmates interested in playing computer games?

10) Where do you like going on holidays with your friends?

D- Complete the following sentences with a gerund using the words given in the box.

go take play x 2 travel x 2 teach tell dance work

1) Young people enjoy _____ to pop music.

2) The players had to stop _____ when it rained heavily.

3) He loves _____ to parties with his friends.

4) I remembered _____ my umbrella before I left the house.

5) Mrs. Demir prefers _____ by car to by taxi.

6) My grandmother liked _____ stories in the winter evenings.

7) I started _____ English when I was 25.

8) My brother usually finishes _____ at 7:00 pm.

9) Ömer is very good at _____ computer games.

10) My wife dreams of _____ round Turkey.

☹ I am looking forward to go on holiday.

☺ I am looking forward to going on holiday.



We use gerund after “look forward to”.

INFINITIVES

We use infinitives with to.

A) To express purpose.

Examples:

I *went to* the post office to post letters.

They bought a new car *to go* on holiday.

B) After certain verbs.

want – decide – agree – try – promise – offer – hope – plan – forget – arrange – remember – start – learn – ask – continue – afford – apply – choose – help – manage – prepare – refuse

C) After certain verbs which take an object and infinitive with to; “advise, allow, forbid invite, order, remind, teach, tell, warn”.

Examples:

I *advised* him *to* watch that film.

My students *reminded* me *to* give them worksheets.

The authorities *warned* people not *to* go out.

D) After the adjectives such as; “sorry, glad, happy, nice, ashamed, afraid”.

Examples:

It is *nice to* be important but it is more important to be nice.

They are *afraid to* walk on the road next to the cemetery.

I am *glad to* be an English teacher.

E) After preferences like; “I would like, would love, would prefer”.

They *would like to* spend their summer holiday at the sea-side .

I *would prefer to* watch the match on TV.

F) With question words.

Examples:

I don’t know *what to* do.

She doesn’t know *where to* go.

We use infinitives without to.

A) With “had better” and “would rather”.

Examples:

We *had better* move another house.

You *had better* telephone your parents.

B) With “let” and “make”.

Examples:

Their mother *lets* the children listen to music.

They *make* the children study their lessons.

☹ I went to the market for buying some food.

☺ I went to the market to buy some food.



After “went”, we always use infinitive.

C) With models.

Examples:

We *can* use computer.

You *must* finish the letters.

EXERCISES

A- Combine the following sentences using to infinitive.

1) I went to the market. I wanted to buy some cheese.

2) The director planned a meeting. He wanted to introduce the new vice-director.

3) The people went to forest. They wanted to have a picnic.

4) The children stayed in because they wanted to finish their homework.

5) Some people go to England every year. They want to learn English.

6) My father went to the garden early. He wanted to pick up some flowers.

7) A group of students went to disco. They wanted to dance until midnight.

8) I learned how to use a computer. I wanted to get a better job.

9) We came back. We forgot to lock the front door.

10) David telephoned his father. He reminded him to buy some chocolate.

B- Complete the following sentences using the “gerund” or the “infinitives”.

1) _____ is harmful for your health.(smoke).

2) My son likes _____ (stay up) late and _____ (get up) late.

3) Most people moved to Istanbul _____ (find) a job.

4) Are you really interested in _____ (play) bağlama.

5) Everybody must _____ (obey) the traffic rules.

6) We went to the cinema _____ (watch) the film “Ali”.

7) My wife reminded me _____ (buy) some fruit and vegetables.

8) Our neighbours are planning _____ (sell) their house.

9) My friend gave up _____ (smoke) three months ago.

10) When I go on holiday I prefer _____ (stay) at the hotel.

☹ They were discussing about the pollution on TV.

☺ They were discussing the pollution on TV.



We don't use prepositions when we discuss something.

C- Combine the following sentences.

- | | |
|------------------------------------|--|
| a) They went to a restaurant. | 1) to study medicine. |
| b) Jane goes to university | 2) to remind him the appointment. |
| c) We always get up early. | 3) to learn what's happening in the country. |
| d) We listen to the news everyday. | 4) to visit her parents. |
| e) We have a dog in the garden. | 5) to be successful. |
| f) She went to Los Angeles. | 6) to have dinner. |
| g) The students have to work hard. | 7) to protect the house from the thieves. |
| h) They moved to another city. | 8) to learn how to use the internet. |
| i) Mrs. Yaz went to a course. | 9) to find a better job. |
| j) I phoned my friend | 10) to catch the bus. |

- 1) _____.
- 2) _____.
- 3) _____.
- 4) _____.
- 5) _____.
- 6) _____.
- 7) _____.
- 8) _____.
- 9) _____.
- 10) _____.

D- Complete the following sentences using gerund or infinite and the words from the box

listen	climb	watch	take	invite	dance	know
have	drive	go	stay	study	learn	park.

- 1) When did your friend decide _____ an English course?
- 2) They like _____ to Sezen Aksu and _____ Kadir İnanır.
- 3) How do you expect your students _____ the answer of that question?
- 4) _____ fast on this narrow road is very dangerous. You may _____ accident.
- 5) My friends _____ me _____ with them at the weekend.
- 6) We chose this school _____ English.
- 7) Are you fond of _____ to pop music?
- 8) You can't park here. Can't you see the no _____ sign?
- 9) Sibel is _____ to university _____ engineering.
- 10) _____ the Mount Ararat is very difficult and dangerous.

☹ The novel was so excited that I finished it in one night.

☺ The novel was so exciting that I finished it in one night.



We use "exciting" for things.

THE PREPOSITIONS OF PLACE (IN / ON / AT)

in	the taxi / a photograph the room / the sky the car / the middle the shop / newspaper Sakarya Turkey the city centre the garden the north of Turkey bed hospital the book the word the street the prison	at	his desk the door the bus stop the traffic lights the top the bottom the end home work school university college my house the concert the party a match	on	the wall the door the ceiling the shelf the plate the floor the tree the envelope the horse the bicycle motorbike a bus train a plain a ship on the ground on the first floor
----	---	----	--	----	---

EXERCISES

A- Complete the following sentences using “in”, “on”, or “at”.

- 1) Jane's father is a doctor. He works _____ a hospital.
- 2) There is a beautiful house _____ the garden.
- 3) My father isn't _____ home. He's _____ work.
- 4) George is studying physics _____ university.
- 5) My office is _____ the second floor _____ school.
- 6) Her father is _____ the way to Istanbul.
- 7) I'll meet them _____ the station tomorrow.
- 8) Janet is giving a party _____ her house next Sunday.
- 9) They met me _____ the airport _____ Istanbul.
- 10) How many passengers are there _____ this bus?
- 11) I read the article _____ the newspaper.
- 12) Have you got a mirror _____ your bag?

☹ The other man entered the conversation.

☺ The other man entered into the conversation.



We use “enter into” / a discussion / conversation etc.

- 13) A lot of people are waiting _____ the bus stop.
- 14) There are a lot of pictures _____ the walls of the classroom.
- 15) Who is the girl _____ the horse?
- 16) Look at that cat _____ the tree.
- 17) Nurhan works _____ a bank _____ Çerkezköy.
- 18) There is a shipwreck _____ the bottom of the sea.
- 19) Bayburt is _____ the north east of Turkey.
- 20) There is a nice cafe _____ the end of this street.
- 21) There are a lot of books _____ Özlem's desk.
- 22) Hüseyin is ill. He is _____ bed now.
- 23) Yesterday we were _____ a football match.
- 24) Write your address _____ the bottom of the page.

B- Answer the following questions as in the example.

Example:

Where are your books?

They are in my bag.

1) Where are the children playing football?

_____.

2) Where do you wait for a bus?

_____.

3) Where do people dance?

_____.

4) Where's your teacher's bag?

_____.

5) Where is the teachers' room in your school?

_____.

6) Where do you write your name on an envelope?

_____.

7) Where are the children swimming?

_____.

8) Where does your father work?

_____.

9) Where is Samsun?

_____.

10) Where do you sleep?

_____.

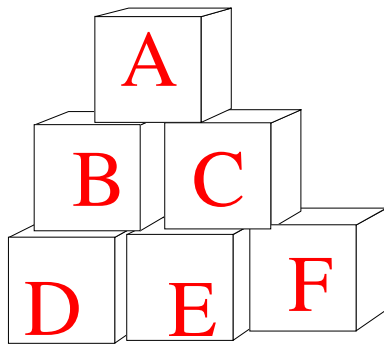
☹ The students entered into the classroom.

☺ The students entered the classroom.



We don't use prepositions when we enter somewhere.

PREPOSITIONS OF PLACE (UNDER / BEHIND / NEXT TO)



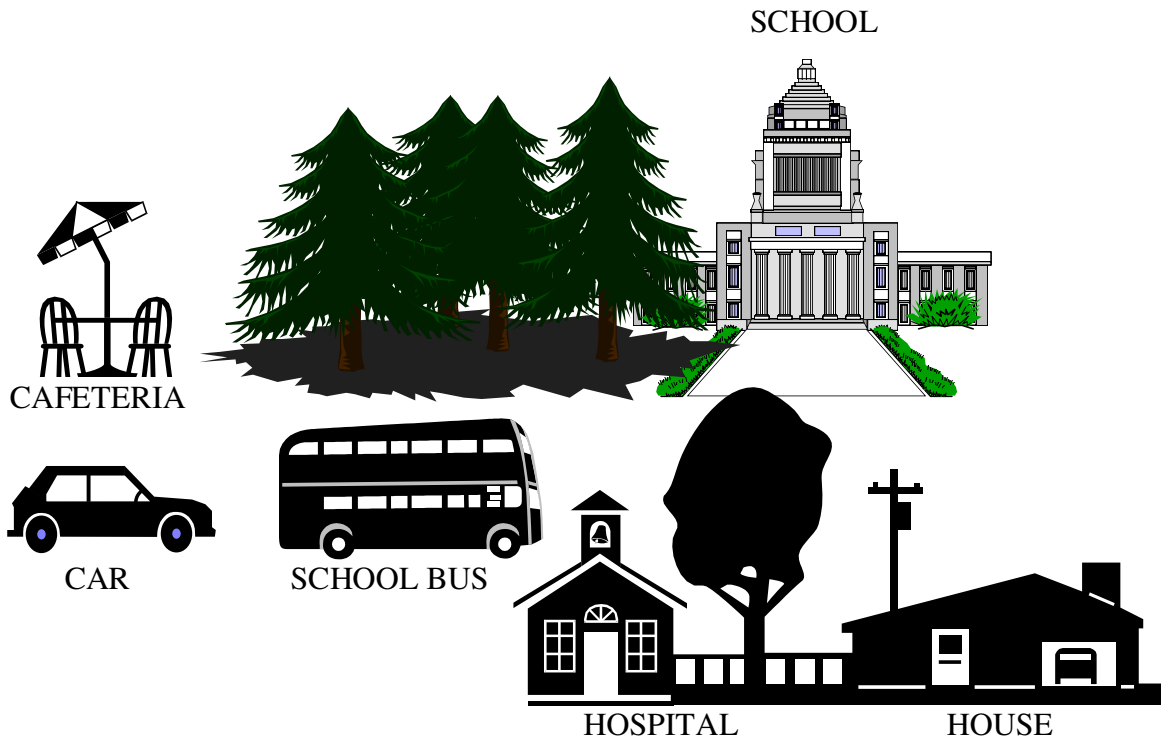
Box B is next to box C.
Box E is between box D and box F.
Box B is under box A.
Box A is on box C.



The ring is in the box



The driver is in his pickup.
His belongings are on the body.



The school is opposite the house.
The cafeteria is near the school.
The hospital is next to the house.
The school bus is on the road.

The pine trees are between the school and the cafeteria.
There is a big tree in the garden of the house.
The car is behind the school bus.
The chairs are under the parasol in the cafeteria.

☹ Their home is in the middle of the city.

☺ Their home is in the centre of the city.



We use "centre" when we want to talk about a certain point.

CLAUSES OF PURPOSE

in order to / to / so that / so as to / in order that / in case / in case of

We use purpose clauses to combine the sentences and to express the purpose of something.

Examples:

I am going to market *to* buy some cake.

She cleaned the office *so that* the director can come there.

My father bought a car *in order to* go on a holiday.

We use “in order not to” or “so as not to” in negative sentences.

Examples:

I set the alarm clock in order not to be late.

I set the alarm clock so as not to be late.

Take some food with you *in case* you get hungry.

Dial 112 *in case of* emergency.

EXERCISE

A- Rewrite the following sentences with clauses of purpose.

- 1) I bought an extra loaf of bread. It may not be enough. (in case)
_____.
- 2) They booked the seats. They won't wait in a queue. (so that)
_____.
- 3) The boy went to the bookshop. He wanted to buy a book. (to)
_____.
- 4) Take a spare tire. The tire may explode. (in case)
_____.
- 5) I searched the internet. I wanted to get some information about my subject. (in order to)
_____.
- 6) They didn't visit the man at the hospital. They didn't want to disturb him. (so as not to)
_____.
- 7) Please, press this button. If there is an emergency situation (in case of).
_____.
- 8) The government invited the IMF authorities. They want to sign a new standby. (in order to)
_____.
- 9) The watchman left the room. He wanted to check the garden. (to)
_____.

☹ I was so exciting that I couldn't answer the question.

😊 I was so excited that I couldn't answer the question.



We use “excited” for people.

FUTURE WILL

Affirmative

I will take.
You will take.
He will take.
She will take.
It will take
We will take.
They will take.

Negative

I will not / won't take.
You will not / won't take.
He will not / won't take.
She will not / won't take.
It will not / won't take.
We will not / won't take.
They will not / won't take.

Question

Will I take?
Will you take?
Will he take?
Will she take?
Will it take?
Will we take?
Will they take?

Short Form

I'll
You'll
He'll
She'll
It'll
We'll
They'll

We use Future Will

A) To express an intention and immediate decision at the moment of speaking.

Examples:

Someone is knocking on the door. *I will* open it.

All right, *I'll* come with you.

Hold on, please. I will call him immediately.

B) For predictions about the future. We usually use “I think”, “believe” and “expect” before it.

Examples:

I think *they will* come to the party.

I believe *my friends will* help me with my project.

I expect, the inflation will be fewer than 10 % at the end of this year.

C- With the sentences related to promises, warnings, hopes and requests.

Examples:

I hope, *they will* come early.

My father promises, *he will* visit us soon.

The municipality warns that there will be shortage of water tomorrow.

TIME EXPRESSIONS

next	Sunday	two days	later	soon	tomorrow
	week	three weeks			
	month	two months			
	year	three years			
	spring	an hour			
	Christmas	ten minutes			
	weekend				

☹ I will speak the students about the lessons.

☺ I will speak to the students about the lessons.



It means; “I will speak nobody else”.

EXERCISES

A- Complete the following sentences with the verbs in the box in Simple Future Tense.

walk ask have be catch make open come go eat

- 1) Please, be quick! We _____ late for school.
- 2) I don't know the way to the post office. I _____ the way.
- 3) Their house is not so far away from here. She _____ or take a taxi.
- 4) It's a very beautiful day. We _____ a picnic by the lake.
- 5) It's very hot here. I _____ the window.
- 6) You are very tired. I _____ you a cup of coffee.
- 7) I think they _____ to Istanbul by bus.
- 8) I am going to the dentist. _____ you _____ with me?
- 9) Children _____ spaghetti with sauce on it.
- 10) I'm sure, the police _____ the burglars.

B- What will the life be like in the future?

Most people	→	use electric cars	Housewives	→	go shopping
Students	→	go to school	Some animals	→	disappear
Some people	→	live in space	People	→	work in offices
There	→	shortage of water	Buses	→	without drivers
There	→	enough rain forests	Robots	→	do the housework
Scientists	→	find a cure of cancer	People	→	eat fruits
Football	→	be popular	People	→	eat vegetables
We	→	live skyscrapers	There	→	poor people
People	→	use money	Everybody	→	use computer
Students	→	use books	People	→	use mobile phone

Now write some more predictions about the life in future as in the example.

Example:

I believe, *people will* use electric cars in the future.

- 1) I think, _____.
- 2) I don't believe, _____.
- 3) I am afraid, _____.

☹ The post office is far from our house.

☺ The post office is a long way from our house.



We use "a long way" in affirmative sentences.

- 4) I am not sure, _____.
- 5) I suppose, _____.
- 6) I doubt, _____.

C- Answer the following questions.

- 1) Where will you be this time next month?
_____.
- 2) Which team will be the champion this year?
_____.
- 3) Who will get the highest mark in English?
_____.
- 4) Do you believe that everybody will have computers in ten years?
_____.
- 5) What will you do before you take the exam?
_____.
- 6) When you have enough money, what will you buy?
_____.

D- Complete the sentences. Use will or won't and a verb from the box.

win see

Canan : I'm going to the big football match tonight. My team, Fenerbahçe, is playing.

Cenk : Do you think they _____?

Canan : Of course. They're the best!

Bora : You look sad. What's the matter?

Berk : My girlfriend is on her way to Germany. She's going to live there,
so I probably _____ her again.

Bora : Why not? You can go there for a holiday.

E- Complete these predictions with verbs from the box in the future simple.

fall be disappear snow get increase be

- 1) Temperature _____ by a few degrees.
- 2) Tomorrow, it _____ all day.
- 3) Next winter, there _____ a lot of snow.
- 4) The world population _____ and there _____ enough food or water for everyone.
- 5) Cities by the sea _____ when the level of the sea rises.
- 6) The weather _____ better tomorrow.

☹ The post office isn't a long way from our house.

☺ The post office isn't far from our house.



We use "far from" in negative sentences.

BE GOING TO OR WILL

EXERCISES

A- Choose the best alternative

- 1) Look out. You *are going to / will* crash the window.
- 2) I am not sure. I *will / am going to* phone her at the weekend.
- 3) My wife bought two tickets. We *will / are going to* watch the film.
- 4) The clouds are very dark. It *is going to / will* rain.
- 5) They *are going to / will* play the match at Şükrü Saraçoğlu Stadium.
- 6) When they visit him, he *is going to / will* give them some chocolate.
- 7) I hope, my friends *are going to / will* help me.
- 8) We have decided to repaint our house. What colour *are you going to / will* paint it?
- 9) Why are you going out? I *am going to / will* buy bread.
- 10) I am sure you *will / are going to* pass your final exam.
- 11) I think Sarah *will / is going to* get a new job.
- 12) Do you think Carol *is going to / will* phone you this evening?
- 13) Don't worry about the money. I'm sure they *will / are going to* lend you some.
- 14) Why are you cleaning the car? I *am going to / will* take the children to the zoo.
- 15) What would you like to drink? I *will / am going to* have a cup of tea, please.

B- Rewrite the following sentences in “be going to” future or “will”.

- 1) My father has an appointment at the doctor's.
_____.
- 2) We plan to move to our new house next year.
_____.
- 3) I am likely to finish the book at the end of this month.
_____.
- 4) They arranged a meeting about unemployment for the weekend.
_____.
- 5) Tom bought two tickets for the concert on Sunday.
_____.
- 6) I am afraid I have a lot of work at the time of the match.
_____.
- 7) They didn't decide where to go. Antalya or Muğla.
_____.
- 8) The children are making a lot of noise. The baby is sleeping.
_____.
- 9) Mr. Aydın is planning to take the students to the Black Sea Region.
_____.

☹ The company gave an advertisement about the new product.

☺ The company gave an advertisement for the new product.



We use “give advertisement for something”.

THE PAST CONTINUOUS TENSE

Affirmative

I was sleeping.
You were sleeping.
He was sleeping.
She was sleeping.
It was sleeping.
We were sleeping.
They were sleeping.

Negative

I was not sleeping.
You were not sleeping.
He was not sleeping.
She was not sleeping.
It was not sleeping.
We were not sleeping.
They were not sleeping.

Question

Was I sleeping?
Were you sleeping?
Was he sleeping?
Was she sleeping?
Was it sleeping?
Were we sleeping?
Were they sleeping?

We use The Past Continuous Tense

A) To talk about an action which was in progress at a particular point of past time. We don't use this tense to say that the action was complete but we use it to show that the action was processing.

Examples:

I was working in Amasya seven years ago.
They were having breakfast at eight o'clock.
She was making cake for the birthday party.
At this time last week, we *were driving* to Ankara

B) We use “when”, “while”, “as” and “just as” to join the sentences. We usually use “while”, “as”, and “just as” before the past continuous tense and we use “when” before the simple past tense.

Examples:

I was going home. I met one of my old friends.
When I met one of my old friends, *I was going* home
While *I was going* home, I met one of my old friends.
or
As *I was going* home, I met one of my old friends.

C) We can also use past continuous tense to describe two continuing actions happening at the same time.

Examples:

I was preparing an exam. My children *were watching* TV.
While *I was preparing* exam, my children *were watching* TV.

EXERCISES

A- Complete the sentences with the correct form of the verbs.

- 1) I was walking to school when I _____ (see) the accident.
- 2) While their mothers _____ (talk), the children were playing ball.



The teacher gave the students an advice on studying lesson.



The teacher gave the students some advice on studying lesson.



“Advice” is an uncountable noun.

- 3) When I last _____ (see) Ann at the airport, she _____ (wait) for the flight.
- 4) My wife fell asleep while she _____ (watch) TV.
- 5) While the students _____ (wait) for the exams, they were very excited.
- 6) The students _____ (talk) to each other while the teacher _____ (teach) the new subject.
- 7) As Fatih _____ (drive) the car, Mehmet _____ (sleep) at the back seat.
- 8) The child _____ (cry) because he _____ (lose) his money.
- 9) They _____ (sing) happily at the party when I _____ .(arrive)
- 10) When the teacher _____ (enter) the classroom, the students _____ (study) lesson.
- 11) Everybody _____ (start) to run when it _____ (start) raining.
- 12) As the man _____ (set) the table, the woman _____ (make) salad.

B- Choose the correct word and underline it.

- 1) While I *was having / had* a bath, the electricity *went off / was going off*.
- 2) While they *had / were having* breakfast, their friends *were calling / called* them.
- 3) When Mr. Kara *arrived / was arriving* at his office, his secretary *was typing / typed* letters.
- 4) The car *broke down / was breaking down* while we *were going / went* to Trabzon.
- 5) When Ünal *arrived / was arriving* home, Hacer *was playing / played* with Emir.
- 6) As I *went / was going* home, I *found / was finding* an old coin.
- 7) Jack's wife *found / was finding* the pictures while she *was cleaning / cleaned* the house.
- 8) While the parents *were talking / talked*, the children *were playing / played* with toys.
- 9) When they *arrived / were arriving* at the airport, the guide *was waiting / waited* for them.
- 10) While I *listened / was listening* to the song, I *remembered / was remembering* my mother.

C- Answer the following questions.

- 1) What was your mother doing when you arrived home?
_____.
- 2) Where was your father going when you saw him in the street?
_____.
- 3) Why was your friend crying when you entered the classroom?
_____.
- 4) Who helped your mother while she was cooking?
_____.
- 5) What did you buy when you last went shopping?
_____.
- 6) What was your friend doing while you were studying?
_____.
- 7) What did your father do when he saw your report?
_____.

☹ After two hours, we are playing tennis.

☺ In two hours, we are playing tennis.



We use "in" if it means at the end of a period.

D- Ask questions for underlined words.

1) I was buying the tickets when the train moved.

- a- _____ ?
b- _____ ?
c- _____ ?

2) They were swimming in the pool at this time yesterday.

- a- _____ ?
b- _____ ?
c- _____ ?

3) I went jogging every day last summer.

- a- _____ ?
b- _____ ?
c- _____ ?
d- _____ ?

4- The Governor was giving a briefing to the minister in the conference hall yesterday.

- a- _____ ?
b- _____ ?
c- _____ ?
d- _____ ?
e- _____ ?

5- The journalists were trying to get news about the train crash.

- a- _____ ?
b- _____ ?
c- _____ ?

**E- The inspector is questioning some people about the bank robbery.
Write his questions in past continuous tense or in the Past Simple Tense.**

- 1) What / you / do / at 11:30 a.m. yesterday? _____ ?
2) Where / be / the guard? _____ ?
3) What / Mr Gül / do? _____ ?
4) How many robbers / go / into the bank? _____ ?
5) The robbers / carry / guns? _____ ?
6) Where / their van / wait? _____ ?
7) Driver / a man or a woman? _____ ?
8) You / see / anybody else outside the bank? _____ ?
9) Some men / repair / the alarm system? _____ ?
10) Anyone / wait / at the bus stop? _____ ?

☹ I am agree with you.

☺ I agree with you.



“Agree” is a verb, not an adjective.

ADJECTIVES

We use adjectives:

a) Before nouns.

brown eyes, beautiful girl, round table, Turkish boy.

b) After some verbs like: **be, smell, feel, become, get, seem, look etc.**

You look *sorry*. Have you got a problem?

The food smells *delicious*. Who cooked it?

I am *very happy* today. Because it's my birthday.

Yesterday the weather was *cold* and *snowy*.

KINDS OF ADJECTIVES

1) **Possessive Adjectives:** my, your, his, her, its, our, your, their.

This is *my* new car. Did you like it?

Their house is next to the post office.

2) **Interrogative Adjectives:** which, whose, what.

Which book did you like most?

Whose father works in that company?

What colour would you like?

3) **Quantitative Adjectives:** some/any/no/few/much/many/a lot of/one, ten.

My friend has got *a lot of* books in his library.

The little child has *no* friends.

Do you need *much* money to build your house?

4) **Demonstrative Adjectives:** this, that, these / those.

I bought *these* books yesterday.

Have you ever been to *that* restaurant?

This book belongs to my friend.

5) **Distributive Adjectives:** either, neither, every, each.

Each student has got a dictionary.

I have seen *neither* of the children.

6) **Adjectives of Quality:** bad, thin, fat, dirty, clean, clever.

He bought a *gold* watch for his wife's birthday.

There are a lot of *clean* restaurants in the town.

The Order of Adjectives.

Size	Age	Shape	Colour	Origin	Material	Noun
A small A big	New Old	Round Round	Blue Brown	Turkish	Plastic Leather	Ball Armchair

☹ The footballers were very nervous with the referee.

☺ The footballers were very angry with the referee.



We use "angry" to show a temporary state.

EXERCISES

A- Put the words in the right order.

- 1) bought/I/new/a/bag/leather. _____.
- 2) They/wonderful/had /a/night/at the disco. _____.
- 3) She/buy/wants/a/jacket/new/black/to/. _____.
- 4) My/friend/old/has/some/got/old/picture/lovely/frames. _____.
- 5) They/to/buy/want/wooden/a/old/small/table. _____.

B- Complete the sentences with the correct adjective from the box.

tired late X 2 expensive hot thirsty good careful crowded rainy
easy well sorry rich heavy foreign difficult scientific

- 1) Can you open the window, please? It's very _____ here.
- 2) She can't finish the work today. She feels very _____.
- 3) I am very _____. Could you please give me a glass of water?
- 4) George gets up _____ so he is always _____ for school.
- 5) My wife is a _____ cook. She cooks _____.
- 6) Mr. Pektaş is a very _____ driver. He never drives fast.
- 7) The little boy was very _____ because he lost his toy.
- 8) Mr. Koç can buy a Ferrari because he is very _____.
- 9) The bags are too _____. You can't carry them.
- 10) A lot of people in Turkey can speak _____ languages.
- 11) It is _____ to live in Istanbul because it is very _____.
- 12) The train station was very _____ so I couldn't find my boyfriend.
- 13) The TUBITAK supports _____ works.
- 14) The weather was _____ so the children stayed indoors.
- 15) I answered all the questions. They were very _____.

☹ The last news of the protest is not good.

☺ The latest news of the protest is not good.



"Latest" means up to now.

Adjectives “-ed” or “-ing”

We use adjectives which end with **-ed** to express people’s feeling.

Examples:

I was very *surprised* by the accident news.

The students were *confused* with the exam results.

We use adjectives which end with **-ing** to talk about a person or a thing gives us that feeling.

Examples:

The accident news was very surprising.

The exam results were very confusing for the students.

Some adjectives ending with “-ed” or “-ing”.

bored – boring

interested – interesting

amused – amusing

tired – tiring

frightened – frightening

surprised – surprising

relaxed – relaxing

astonished – astonishing

excited – exciting

disappointed – disappointing

satisfied – satisfying

depressed – depressing

exhausted – exhausting

disgusted – disgusting

annoyed – annoying

shocked – shocking

C- Complete the following sentences with suitable adjectives.

- 1) I am not interested in politics. Because it is not _____ (interesting/interested)
- 2) My son is very _____ (excited/exciting) because he is going to take an exam tomorrow.
- 3) Mr. Durmaz worked very hard today. He feels very _____ (tired/tiring)
- 4) The story was very long and very _____ (bored/boring).
- 5) The fun-fair was very _____ (amused/amusing). We had great fun.
- 6) After the earthquake, the life in the Marmara Region was very _____.
(depressed/depressing)
- 7) The match was very _____ (excited/exciting) and we were very _____
(confused/confusing).
- 8) The questions were very _____ (confused/confusing).
- 9) The result was very _____ (astonished/astonishing).
- 10) After the bath, the children were all _____ (relaxed/relaxing).

☹ She is a well student.

☺ She is a good student.



“Good” is an adjective.

ADVERBS

Adverbs modify verbs, adjectives or other adverbs.

Children can learn English through games *easily*.

Adverbs usually go after verbs.

The man was driving *carefully*.

Adverbs usually go before adjectives and other adverbs.

The examination was *extremely* difficult.

The students studied *incredibly* hard for the exam

KINDS OF ADVERBS

1) Adverbs of frequency: always, usually, ever, never, often, frequently, twice, once, etc.

They go before the main verb, and after the verb to be.

I am *always* tired after school.

They *always* go shopping *once* a week.

2) Adverbs of manner: quickly, slowly, politely, easily, etc... They go before the main verb, after the verb auxiliary or at the end.

He *politely* refused to go there.

The teacher was *patiently* answering the students' questions.

At the concert, the dancers danced *beautifully*.

3) Adverbs of time: soon, now, last month, then, next week, recently, today, tomorrow, afterwards, eventually, etc. They usually go at the end of the sentences.

We will finish the school *next month*.

Tom graduated from the university *last year*.

4) Adverbs of place: here, there, outside, etc.

The police arrived *here* in ten minutes after I telephoned them.

5) Adverbs of degree: completely, certainly, undoubtedly, very, quite, rather, extremely, etc.

They usually go before the adjectives and verbs.

The weather was *quite* cold yesterday.

This book is *completely* different from the others.

The guests *quite* liked the party.

If we want to emphasise the adverbs, we can use them at the very beginning of the sentences.

Last month, Turkey sent some troops to Afghanistan.

Quietly, they left the conference.

At the hospital, they were smoking.



I can't speak English very good.



I can't speak English very well.



"Well" is an adverb and it modifies the verb.

Adjective + ly
Careful-carefully
Quick-quickly
Soft-softly
Bad-badly

Adjective + ily
heavy-heavily
easy-easily
angry-angrily
happy-happily

Adjective + bly
comfortable-comfortably
probable-probably

Irregular Adjectives
good-well
hard-hard
fast-fast
late-late
early-early

EXERCISES

A- Complete the sentences using a suitable adverb from the box.

quietly	badly	loudly	clearly	carefully	hard
slowly	well	immediately	easily		

- 1) Please speak _____. I can't hear you.
- 2) Enter the room _____. The baby is sleeping.
- 3) I asked my brother to drive _____ because the roads were icy.
- 4) Please write your homework _____. I can't read it.
- 5) This is the last form. Please fill it in _____.
- 6) They lived in England for a year. They can speak English _____.
- 7) The workers had a lot of work so they worked very _____.
- 8) I know around Istanbul. I can find the address _____.
- 9) Our team lost the match. They played _____.
- 10) I have no time. I want to finish the work _____.

B- Rewrite the sentences using an adverb as in the example.

- | | |
|--|--|
| 1) Teoman is a good singer.
<i>He sings well.</i> | 6) Schumacher is a fast driver
_____. |
| 2) Emre is a very good footballer.
_____. | 7) My friend is a patient teacher.
_____. |
| 3) Yılmaz Erdoğan is a good actor.
_____. | 8) Mirsat is an angry basketball player.
_____. |
| 4) İsmail is a good teacher.
_____. | 9) I gave them polite answers.
_____. |
| 5) Carl Lewis was a fast runner.
_____. | 10) They have a happy life.
_____. |

☹ Firstly, the car was OK., but it broke down yesterday.

☺ At first, the car was OK., but it broke down yesterday.



"At first" is a time adverb.

C- Choose the correct word: Adjective or adverb.

- 1) He went to bed *late / lately* and got up *late / lately*
- 2) My pen-friend answered my letter *quick / quickly*. He is a *good / well* friend.
- 3) The questions were very *easily / easy*. The students answered them *easily / easy*.
- 4) Their director is a *polite / politely* person. He always speaks *polite / politely*.
- 5) Ebru Gündeş is a *good / well* singer. She sings *good / well*.
- 6) Their house is very *comfortable / comfortably*. They live there *comfortable / comfortably*.
- 7) He is riding his bike *dangerous / dangerously*.
- 8) The spectators were very *patiently / patient*. They waited *patiently / patient*.
- 9) They are a very *happy / happily* family. They live *happy / happily*.
- 10) The pupils are very *intelligent / intelligently*. They ask questions *intelligent / intelligently*.

D- Ask questions for underlined words.

- 1) The children were playing in the garden happily.
a) _____
b) _____
c) _____
- 2) In my father's time, teachers behaved the students well, too.
a) _____
b) _____
c) _____
- 3) I am sure, our children will live in the world peacefully.
a) _____
b) _____
c) _____

E. Complete these sentences with an adjective or an adverb.

- 1) Tim's a very _____ golf player. He always loses.
- 2) Daisy works too _____. That's why she's ill.
- 3) Don't speak so _____! Nobody can hear you.
- 4) Selim is _____ at languages, so he is going to be an interpreter.
- 5) He speaks very _____ and everybody understands him.
- 6) The secretary studied the situation very _____ before she wrote a report.
- 7) Mert usually gets to school _____ but this morning he was _____.

☹ I apologized the people in the party for living so early.

☺ I apologized to the people in the party for living so early.



We use "apologize to people".

AS - AS

We use “as-as” to show that the two things are the same.

Examples:

Today is *as* cold *as* it was yesterday.

Cem Yılmaz is *as* talented *as* Yılmaz Erdoğan.

I am *as* hungry *as* a wolf.

We also use “as-as” in questions.

Examples:

Have you bought *as* much fruit *as* you want?

Are you *as* old *as* your friend?

We use “as-as” with some expressions.

Examples:

You can wait here *as* long *as* you want.

Please, come back *as* soon *as* possible.

We also use “as-as” in negative sentences.

Examples:

I can't use computer *as* well *as* Ömer Faruk can.

They don't clean their house *as* often *as* you do.

EXERCISES

A- Make sentences in “as-as” using the names and adjective in brackets.

- 1) (Carol / Jane / tall) _____.
- 2) (Moscow / Washington / not modern) _____.
- 3) (Feyza 22 / Banu 22 / old) _____.
- 4) (Kenan 1.78 / Kübra 1.70 / short) _____.
- 5) (Nescafe / Turkish coffee / delicious) _____.

We can use the expression “the same _____ as”.

Examples:

I bought a red t-shirt. My friend bought a red t-shirt.

I bought *the same* colour t-shirt *as* my friend.

B- Make sentences using “the same _____ as”.

- 1) I am 37. My friend is 37. _____.
- 2) Burcu has blue eyes. Ebru has blue eyes. _____.
- 3) I like diet coke. My sister likes diet coke. _____.
- 4) I got up at 7.30. My son got up at 7.30. _____.



I apologize you all the mistakes I did.



I apologize you for all the mistakes I did.



We use “apologize for something”.

COMPARATIVE / SUPERLATIVE ADJECTIVES

We add “-er” to one-syllable adjectives to make them comparative.

Examples:

old – older

big – bigger

slow – slower

nice – nicer

dark – darker

late – later

large – larger

fast – faster

thin – thinner

clean – cleaner

We add “-ier” to two-syllable adjectives ending in “y”.

Examples:

pretty – prettier

heavy – heavier

early – earlier

dirty – dirtier

lucky – luckier

easy – easier

We add “more” to the other two-syllable and more syllable adjectives.

Examples:

Careful – more careful

polite – more polite

expensive – more expensive

exciting – more exciting

beautiful – more beautiful

crowded – more crowded

interesting – more interesting

comfortable – more comfortable

Some adjectives are irregular.

Examples:

good – better

bad – worse

far – further

little – less

Examples:

This cafe is too *noisy*. Let's go somewhere quieter.

The hotel was *more expensive* than I expected.

Istanbul is *more crowded* than Ankara.

Germany is *further* than Greece.

Her English is *better* than her Turkish

The girl is *more beautiful* than some actresses.

English is *easier* than most of the languages.

Today, the weather is *worse* than yesterday.

I have *less* money than my friend.

Trains are *safer* than buses.

The Black Sea region is *greener* than the Marmara region.

☹ There are less parks in Ankara than in Istanbul.

☺ There are fewer parks in Ankara than in Istanbul.



“Few” is used for countable nouns.

EXERCISES

A- Complete the following sentences using the adjectives in brackets as in the example.

Example:

Our house is *older than* my friend's house.

- 1) Erzurum is _____ (cold) than Ağrı.
- 2) BMW is _____ (expensive) than Hyundai
- 3) Is your father _____ (old) than your mother?
- 4) Is English _____ (difficult) than Turkish?
- 5) Today is _____ (warm) than yesterday.
- 6) France is _____ (big) than England.
- 7) Tarık's marks are _____ (good) than Engin's marks.
- 8) The flowers in our garden are _____ (nice) than the flowers in your garden.
- 9) Our town is _____ (cheap) than your town.

B- Complete the following sentences using comparative forms of the adjectives in the box.

difficult	small	cold	cheap	sharp	exciting	soft	quiet
-----------	-------	------	-------	-------	----------	------	-------

- 1) The room is too hot. I like it a bit _____.
- 2) This example is very simple. I'm sure you can solve _____ ones.
- 3) The hotel is very expensive. Can we find a _____ one in the town?
- 4) This shirt is too big. Have you got a _____ one?
- 5) I can't cut with this knife. Have you got a _____ one?
- 6) The film was very boring. Let's watch a _____ one.
- 7) This pillow is hard. I can't sleep. Have you got a _____ one?
- 8) It's very noisy here. Is there a _____ place near here?

C- Answer the following questions.

- 1) Are you taller than your best friend?
_____.
- 2) Who is better than you in English?
_____.

☹ This book is different than that book.

☺ This book is different from that book.



We use "something is different from another thing."

3) Is boxing more dangerous than karate?

4) Is a Boeing faster than a Concorde?

5) Are science-fiction films more exciting than detective stories?

6) Which is warmer? Antalya or Bursa?

7) Which is more famous? Blue Mosque or Kocatepe Mosque?

8) What is more boring than watching TV?

9) Who is taller than you in the class?

10) Which is higher? Atakule or Galata Tower?

We can use “a bit, a lot, much” before comparative adjectives to emphasize it.

Examples:

It is *much* colder today than yesterday. (It was cold yesterday but today is colder)

My father is *a bit* older than my uncle.

I am *a lot* hungrier now.

SUPERLATIVE ADJECTIVES

We add “-est” to one-syllable adjectives to make them superlative.

Old – the oldest

big – the biggest

slow – the slowest

nice – the nicest

dark – the darkest

late – the latest

large – the largest

fast – the fastest

thin – the thinnest

clean – the cleanest

We add “-iest” two-syllable adjectives ending in “y”.

Pretty – the prettiest

Heavy – the heaviest

Early – the earliest

dirty – the dirtiest

lucky – the luckiest

easy – the easiest

We add “the most” to the other two-syllable and more syllable adjectives.

Careful – the most careful

Polite – the most polite

expensive – the most expensive

beautiful – the most beautiful

crowded – the most crowded

interesting – the most interesting

☹️ The new BMW is superior than its old models.

😊 The new BMW is superior to its old models.



We use “superior to something”.

Some adjectives are irregular.

good	– better	– the best
bad	– worse	– the worst
far	– farther / further	– the farthest / the furthest
little	– less	– the least

Examples:

The mosque is *the oldest* building in our town.

NBA is *the most famous* basketball league in the world.

August is *the hottest* month of the year.

This is *the nicest* room in the hotel.

It was *the most boring* film I've ever watched.

Golf is *the least exciting* sport for me.

I am not *the most experienced* teacher in my school.

Our department is *the busiest* department at school.

D- Look at the chart and make superlative sentences as in the example.

The River Nile	high	city	in the world
Mount Ararat	long	continent	in Turkey
The Kızılırmak	large	mountain	in our family.
Konya	old	river	
Asia	hot	person	
My father	fast	hotel	
Antalya	crowded	animal	
Cheetah	popular	language	
Istanbul	young		
English			
Hüseyin			

Example:

Hüseyin is *the youngest* person in our family.

- 1) _____.
- 2) _____.
- 3) _____.
- 4) _____.
- 5) _____.
- 6) _____.
- 7) _____.
- 8) _____.
- 9) _____.
- 10) _____.

☹ Mother said to her son: "You are fool."

😊 Mother said to her son: "You are a fool."



"Fool" is a noun and used with the verb to be.

E- Complete the following sentences with superlative form of the adjectives.

- 1) Muş is _____ (far) city I've ever been to.
- 2) Grammarline _____ (practical) book I've ever read.
- 3) Brave Heart _____ (good) film I've ever watched.
- 4) Love Story _____ (romantic) song I've ever listened.
- 5) Thanks for the dinner. This _____ (good) dinner I've ever had.
- 6) I didn't like the party. It _____ (boring) party I had ever been to.
- 7) The tourists liked Antalya very much. It _____ (hot) place they had ever been to.
- 8) The footballers were very excited. It _____ (big) stadium they had ever played.
- 9) My mother died on 1 October 1996. It _____ (sad) day in my life.
- 10) I can't forget her. She _____ (beautiful) girl I've ever seen.

F- Answer the following questions.

- 1) Which was the happiest day of your life?
_____.
- 2) Who is the most important person in your life?
_____.
- 3) Who is the oldest person in your family?
_____.
- 4) Who is the most hardworking student in your class?
_____.
- 5) Which is the most famous building in your town?
_____.
- 6) What is the biggest mistake you've ever had?
_____.
- 7) Which is the best film you've ever watched?
_____.
- 8) Who is the most famous person you've ever met?
_____.
- 9) What is the most exciting book you've ever read?
_____.
- 10) Which is the most expensive cloth you've ever bought?
_____.
- 11) What is your biggest idea for future?
_____.
- 12) Who is the luckiest person in your family?
_____.

☹ Mother said to her son: "You are a foolish".

☺ Mother said to her son: "You are foolish".



"Foolish" is an adjective.

G- Complete the following sentences “comparative” or “superlative”.

- 1) We gave a party at _____ (good) disco in the city.
- 2) What is _____ (popular) music in your town?
- 3) What is _____ (strong) than a horse?
- 4) The Black Sea region _____ (wet) than the Marmara region.
- 5) What is _____ (little) dangerous sport?
- 6) The director was _____ (early) person this morning.
- 7) I always get up _____ (late) than my wife.
- 8) Our room is much _____ (comfortable) than their room.
- 9) He was sorry yesterday but he looks _____ (happy) today.
- 10) _____ (happy) day of his life was his tenth birthday.

H- Read the following comparison between Erzurum and İzmir. Fill in the gaps with one word only.

İzmir has a much (1) _____ population (2) _____ Erzurum and the towns in İzmir are (3) _____ crowded than the ones in Erzurum. There are not (4) _____ many mountains in İzmir (5) _____ in Erzurum. Both cities have interesting historical places. But İzmir has many (6) _____ rivers than Erzurum. All parts of Erzurum have much (7) _____ snow in winter than anywhere in İzmir. İzmir is in the Western part of Turkey and doesn't have its winter at the same time (8) _____ the cities in the Eastern part of Turkey. All the people in these cities speak the same language (9) _____ each other, Turkish, but their accents are very different.

I- Only one of the following comparative sentences is correct. Correct the mistakes where necessary.

- 1) She got up more late than she did. _____.
- 2) My stereo is moderner than hers. _____.
- 3) Tuncay is a more good footballer than me _____.
- 4) Is it more difficult as her last exam? _____.
- 5) I paid less than my cousin for the ticket _____.
- 6) My girlfriend is the same age like me. _____.
- 7) My father's earache is badder today. _____.
- 8) My parents live much more far away now _____.

☹ My daughter is a coward girl.

☺ My daughter is a coward.



“Coward” is a noun and it means: “one without courage”.

THE MORE / THE MORE

It is used to express that something depends on another thing.

Examples.

The earlier you get up, *the healthier* you feel .

The more you study, *the more* successful you will be.

The earlier we start work, *the earlier* we finish it.

The sunnier the weather is, *the happier* I feel.

The more you work, *the more* you earn.

EXERCISE

A- Rewrite the following sentences using “the more / the more” as in the example.

Example:

If a student listens to his teacher carefully, he can understand the subject better.

The more carefully a student listens to his teacher, *the better* he can understand the subject.

1) If you eat less bread, you will keep fit.

2) If you read more, you will be more intellectual.

3) If you travel more, you will see more places.

4) If you read slowly, you will understand better.

5) If you smoke more, you will be unhealthier.

6) If you rest, you will feel relaxed.

7) If you eat more fruit and vegetables, you will be healthier.

8) If you smile, you will be happier.

9) If you talk politely, the people will like you.

10) If Turkey exports more products, she will earn more money.

11) When you practice more, you can solve more problems.

12) If you eat slowly, you can digest better.

☹ Rick is a well swimmer.

☺ Rick is a good swimmer.



“Good” is an adjective and it modifies the nouns.

SO OR SUCH

“So” is used before the adjectives and adverbs.

Examples:

It is *so* cold today!

They played *so* well!

“So” is used with “many” and “much”.

Examples:

There are *so* many students in the classroom.

My son had *so* much work to do.

“So” is used to describe the result of an action together with “that”.

Examples:

It was *so* cold *that* we didn’t go out.

They played *so* well *that* they won the match 3-0

“Such” is used before an adjective and singular or plural nouns.

Examples:

He was *such* a clever student.

They are *such* beautiful houses.

“Such” is used with “a lot of” and it modifies the nouns, countable or uncountable.

Examples:

They bought *such a lot of* books from the bookshop.

They had *such a lot of* work to do at the weekend.

“Such” is used to describe the result of an action together with “that”.

Example:

He was *such* a clever student *that*, he always got high marks.

EXERCISES

A- Complete the following sentences with “so” or “such”.

- 1) It is difficult to finish the project because there is _____ much work to do.
- 2) Ziya drives carefully. He is _____ a careful driver.
- 3) Most of the teachers are _____ helpful. I love them.
- 4) I haven’t visited my friend for _____ a long time.
- 5) They have never walked _____ far from the house.
- 6) He loves playing football. It’s _____ an exciting sport.

☹ The meal smells deliciously.

☺ The meal smells delicious.



After the verbs, “look, feel, taste, smell” we use adjectives, not adverbs.

- 7) Computers are _____ helpful machines.
- 8) The children love their parents. They tell _____ nice stories.
- 9) Cenk always wears _____ pretty clothes.
- 10) I have never carried _____ a heavy bag before.
- 11) The old man was _____ tired that he went to bed early.

B- Make sentences from the table using “so that” or “such that”

- | | |
|----------------------------------|---------------------------------|
| a) The music was too slow. | 1) We couldn't leave the hotel. |
| b) He is a hardworking student. | 2) He never gets bad marks. |
| c) Ömer uses computer well. | 3) He can type 40 pages a day. |
| d) The hotel was very expensive. | 4) Nobody wanted to stay there. |
| e) The weather was too foggy. | 5) The drivers couldn't drive. |
| f) It's an exciting book. | 6) I couldn't hear it. |
| g) It's a very long film. | 7) They couldn't finish it. |
| h) Canary is a beautiful island. | 8) Everybody wants to go there. |
| i) They gave a big party. | 9) I can't stop reading it. |
| j) It was too hot. | 10) Everybody was there. |

- 1) _____.
- 2) _____.
- 3) _____.
- 4) _____.
- 5) _____.
- 6) _____.
- 7) _____.
- 8) _____.
- 9) _____.
- 10) _____.

C- Complete the following sentences.

- 1) All the students passed the exam. It was such _____.
- 2) I missed my sister because I haven't seen her for such _____.
- 3) We couldn't pay the electric bill. It was such _____.
- 4) The girl was shivering. She was so _____.
- 5) Everyone invites her to the parties. She is such _____.
- 6) My grandparents can't walk. They're so _____.
- 7) I can't read your handwriting. It's such _____.

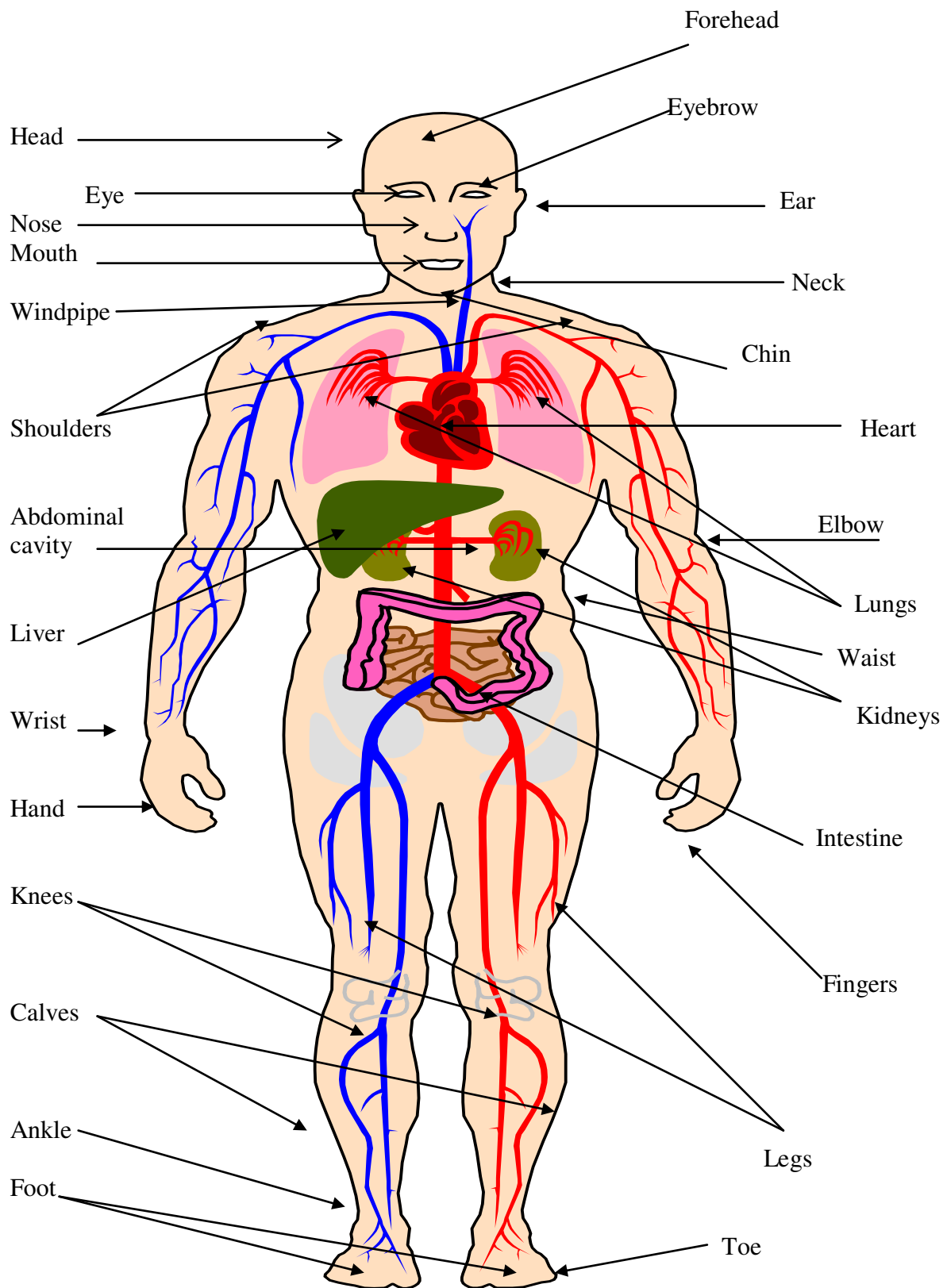
☹ My friend always loses his wallet.

☺ My friend always loses his wallet.



“Lose” means; “not to be able to find the thing.”

HUMAN BODY



PROFESSIONS



DOCTOR



POLICEMAN



DENTIST



WAITER



DIRECTOR



SECRETARY



NOVELIST



GARDENER



CONDUCTOR



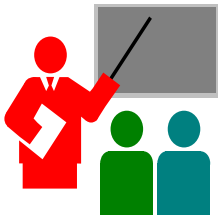
ARTIST



FISHERMAN



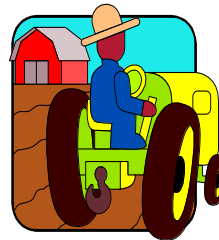
POSTMAN



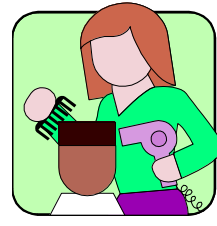
TEACHER



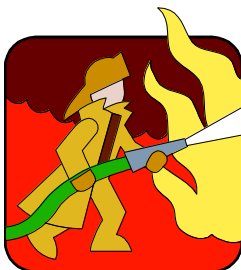
WOODCUTTER



FARMER



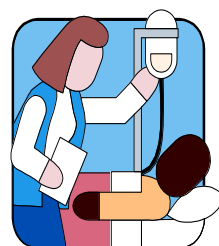
HAIRDRESSER



FIREMAN



PHARMACIST



NURSE



CARPENTER

SPORTS



FOOTBALL



BASKETBALL



AEROBICS



CYCLING



WINDSURFING



TENNIS



SKIING



RUNNING



HORSE RACING



KARATE



SCUBA DIVING



GOLF



CLIMBING



FENCING



SKATING



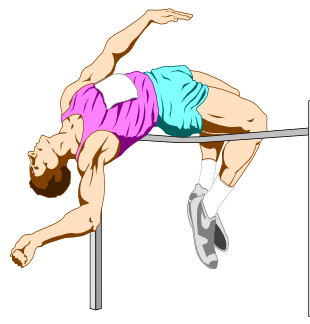
SAILING



BOXING



ICE-HOCKEY



HIGH JUMPING

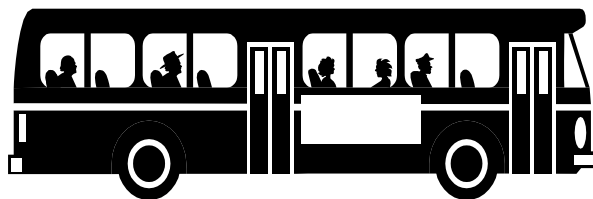


BASEBALL

TRANSPORTATION



CAR



BUS



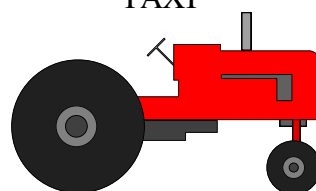
PICK UP



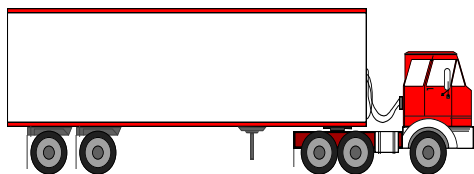
TAXI



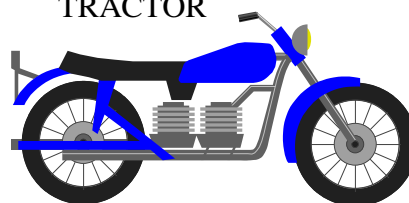
SPORTS CAR



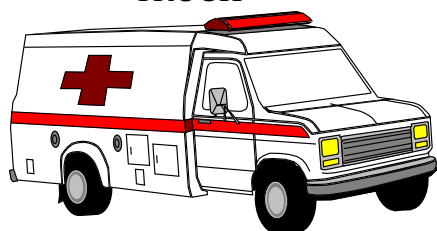
TRACTOR



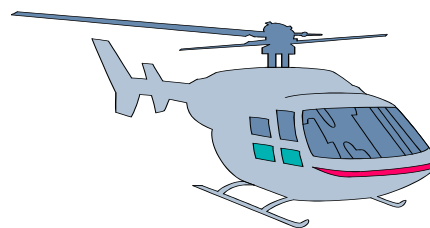
TRUCK



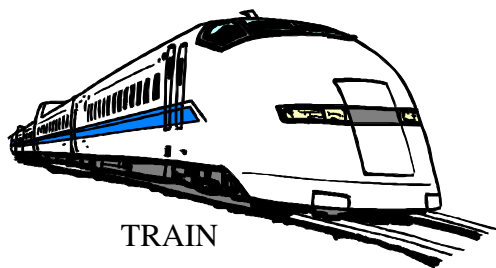
MOTORBIKE



AMBULANCE



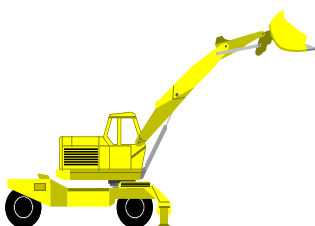
HELICOPTER



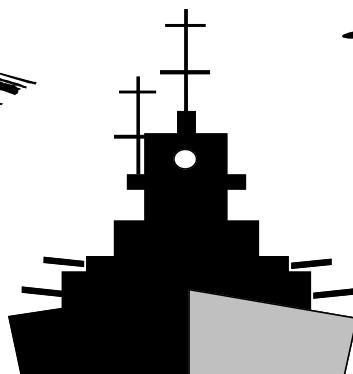
TRAIN



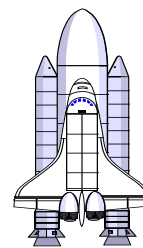
PLANE



EXCAVATOR

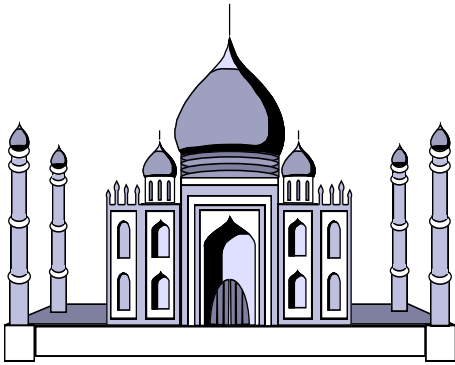


SHIP

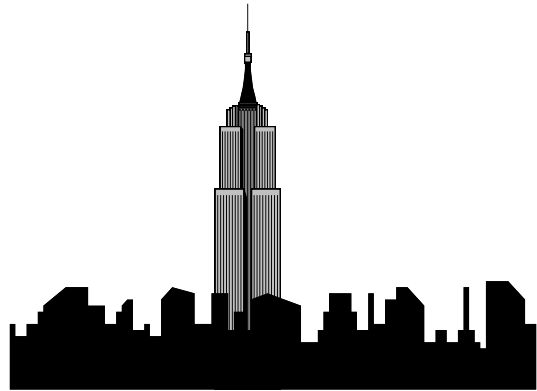


SPACE SHUTTLE

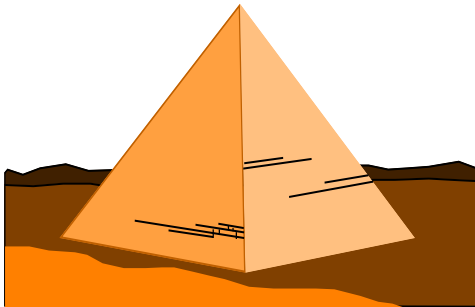
FAMOUS BUILDINGS



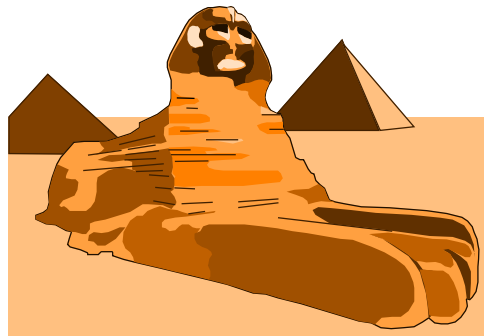
TAJ MAHAL (IN INDIA)



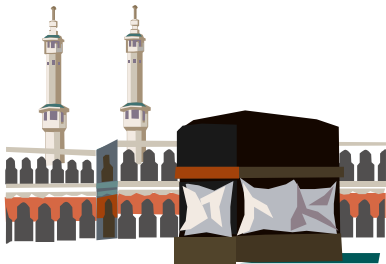
THE EMPIRE STATE BUILDING (IN U.S.A.)



PYRAMID (IN EGYPT)



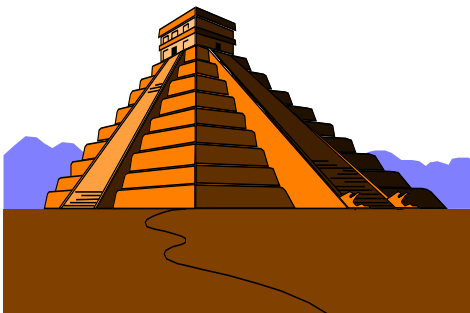
THE SPHINX (IN EGYPT)



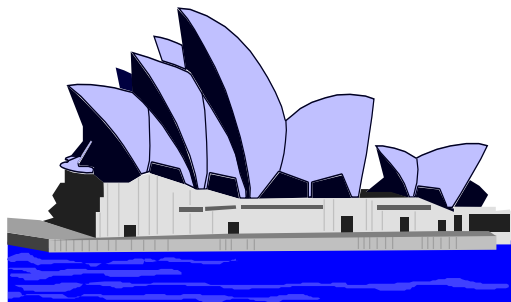
KABE (IN SAUDI ARABIA)



GREAT WALL (IN CHINA)



MAYAN TEMPLE (IN SOUTH AMERICA)



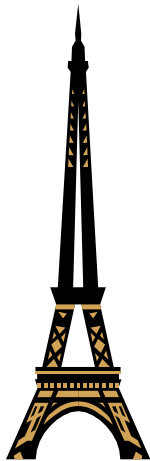
SYDNEY OPERA HOUSE (AUSTRALIA)



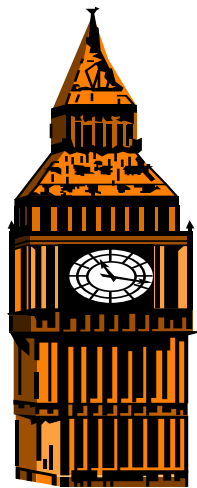
KREMLIN PALACE (IN RUSSIA)



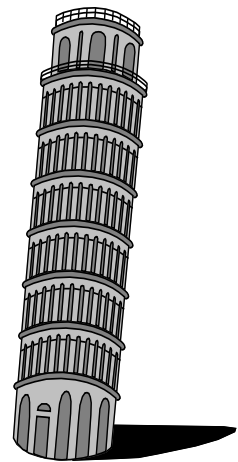
WASHINGTON D.C. (IN U.S.A.)



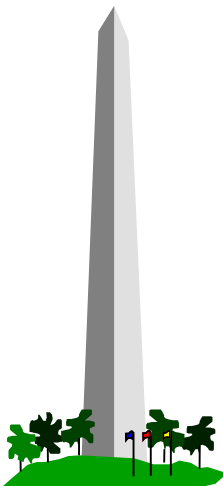
EIFFEL TOWER (IN FRANCE)



BIG BEN (IN ENGLAND)



PIZZA TOWER
(IN ITALY)



WASHINGTON MONUMENT (IN U.S.A.)



THE STATUE OF LIBERTY (IN USA)

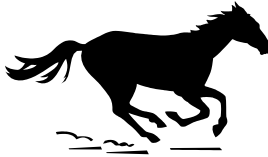
ANIMALS KINGDOM



LION



DOG



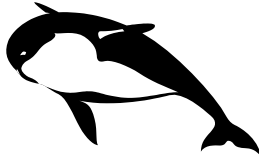
HORSE



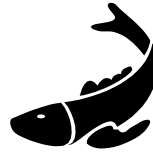
WOLF



SHARK



WHALE



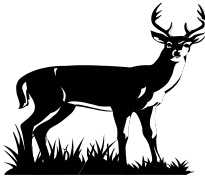
FISH



FROG



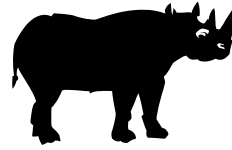
DOLPHIN



DEER



KANGAROO



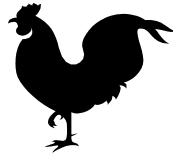
RHINO



OSTRICH



OWL



ROOSTER



TURKEY



ZEBRA



GIRAFFE



TIGER



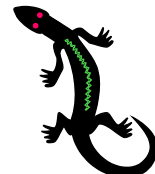
CRAB



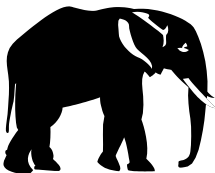
PENGUIN



SNAKE



LIZARD



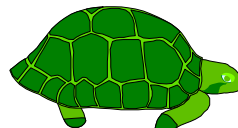
ELEPHANT



BUTTERFLY



BEE



TURTLE



BIRD

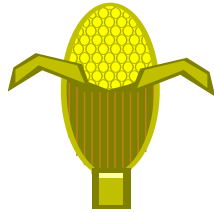


CAT

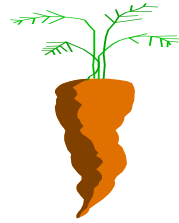
FOOD



APPLE



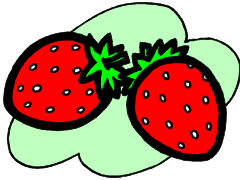
CORN



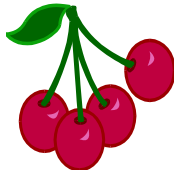
CARROT



PEAR



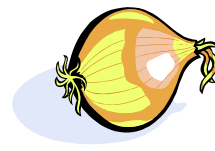
STRAWBERRY



CHERRY



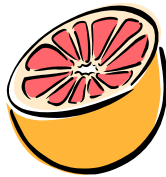
BANANA



ONION



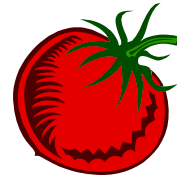
CHILLI



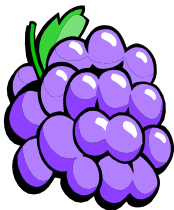
GRAPEFRUIT



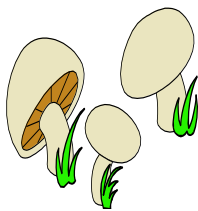
KIWI



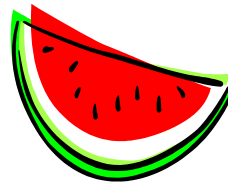
TOMATO



GRAPES



MUSHROOM



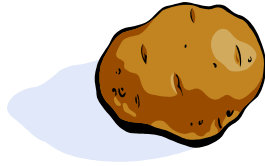
WATERMELON



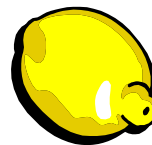
PINEAPPLE



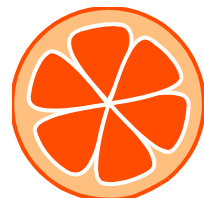
GREEN PEPPER



POTATO

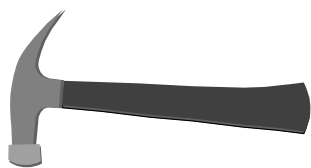


LEMON

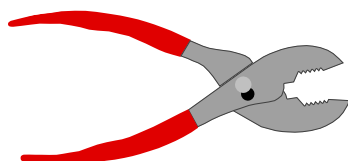


ORANGE

TOOLS



HAMMER



WRENCH



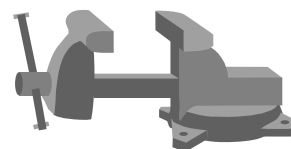
ADJUSTABLE WRENCH



SPANNER



ADJUSTABLE SPANNER



VICE



MALLET



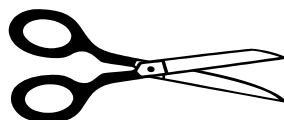
HANDSAW



MEASURING DRAW TAPE



POCKET KNIFE



SCISSORS



TROWEL



LAWN RAKE



SHOVEL



HOE



WHEELBARROW



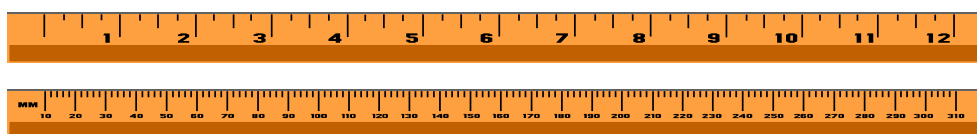
SCREWDRIVER



NAIL

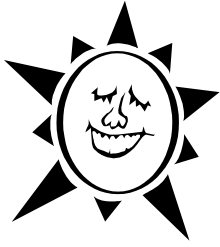


SCREW

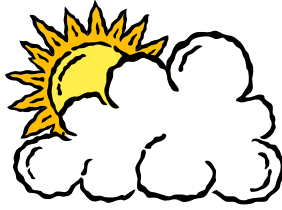


RULER

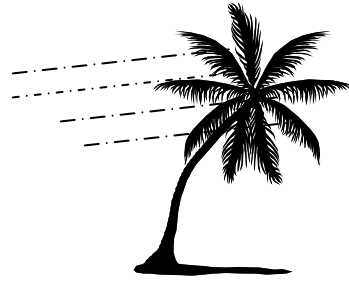
THE WEATHER



SUNNY



PARTLY CLOUDY



WINDY



STORMY



RAINY



CLOUDY



SNOWY

Examples:

What is the weather like today?

It is cloudy.

What will the weather be like tomorrow?

I think it will be rainy. Put on your raincoat.

What was the weather like yesterday?

It was snowy. We made a snowman.

EXERCISE

A- Look at the table and make sentences about the weather.

	Yesterday	Today	Tomorrow
Ankara	Cloudy	Rainy	Stormy
Erzurum	Snowy	Snowy	Windy
Izmir	Sunny	Partly Cloudy	Cloudy
Istanbul	Rainy	Rainy	Partly Cloudy

- 1) Ankara _____ yesterday.
 Ankara _____ today.
 Ankara _____ tomorrow
- 2) Erzurum _____ yesterday.
 Erzurum _____ today.
 Erzurum _____ tomorrow
- 3) İzmir _____ yesterday.
 İzmir _____ today.
 İzmir _____ tomorrow.
- 3) Istanbul _____ yesterday.
 Istanbul _____ today.
 Istanbul _____ tomorrow.

SAPANCA OR “THE NATURAL BEAUTY”

Sapanca is situated on the east of Marmara region between Sakarya and Kocaeli. It is on the motorway. It's one of the beautiful towns of Turkey-a town where you can swim, go skiing, go trekking and have a picnic. It's really a peaceful town. It's not so crowded. Now it has a population of nearly 30,000.

The population comes from all over the country, including some foreigners from different countries who work in different factories in Sakarya and İzmit.

Sapanca has got a lake called with the same name. It has got lots of spectacular views. It's a town full of trees and colourful flowers. You can have a rest under the trees and among the flowers and drink 5 o'clock tea. It's only one and a half hour drive from Istanbul. You can go to Sapanca by train, too. Sapanca is famous for its lake, fruit gardens, forest and picnic areas. People from İstanbul, Sakarya, Kocaeli and other cities come to Sapanca at the weekends, to have fresh air and rest. There are a lot of fish farms and restaurants in Sapanca. People go there to eat fish and the nature embraces them.

City forest, where green and blue meet, is the largest picnic area in the town. At the weekends, people from different cities go there to relax and swim in one of the cleanest lakes in Turkey. Soğucak plateau, which is fifteen kilometres away from the town, is ideal for trekking. It takes fifteen minutes to reach the plateau by car.

The weather in Sapanca is pleasant all year. It is usually sunniest in June, July and August. There isn't much snow in winter but it rains a lot in winter.

If you want to relax and have a good weekend, it's time to go to Sapanca.

EXERCISES

A- Decide True (T) or False (F).

- | | |
|--|---|
| 1) Sapanca has a population of 50,000. | T <input type="checkbox"/> F <input type="checkbox"/> |
| 2) It is very far from Istanbul. | T <input type="checkbox"/> F <input type="checkbox"/> |
| 3) The lake is very clean. | T <input type="checkbox"/> F <input type="checkbox"/> |
| 4) It's between Kocaeli and Sakarya. | T <input type="checkbox"/> F <input type="checkbox"/> |

B- Answer the following questions.

- | | |
|--|--------|
| 1) What is the population of Sapanca? | _____. |
| 2) How far is it from Istanbul? | _____. |
| 3) Where can people have a picnic ? | _____. |
| 4) Can you swim in Sapanca? | _____. |
| 5) How long does it take to go to Soğucak Plateau? | _____. |
| 6) What can you do in Soğucak Plateau? | _____. |
| 7) Where can you have a rest and drink tea? | _____. |
| 8) Where can you eat fish? | _____. |

☹ The girl is popular among her friends.

☺ The girl is popular with her friends.



We always use “popular with” Turkish people, girls, boys, etc.

FIREMEN RESCUED A FAMILY

Firemen pulled two men, a woman and three children out of rushing water in Mersin. The family got into trouble first. Their car drove off the road into the water. A truck driver almost died when he tried to save them.

The trouble started when Mr. Kaya lost control of his car on the road. The car fell down ten metres from the road into the water. All the people in the car were wearing their seatbelts, so nobody was hurt. However, they couldn't leave the car.

Truck driver's friend dialled 112. The rescue started immediately. The truck driver arrived before the firemen. He found a rope and he jumped into the water. He fastened the car with the rope and waited for the firemen.

Then, the firemen arrived. They put on special clothes they brought with them. Firstly, they pulled the people out through the windscreen. They saved the family and took them to the hospital.

EXERCISES

A- Decide True (T) or False (F).

- | | |
|---|---|
| 1) There were three people in the car. | T <input type="checkbox"/> F <input type="checkbox"/> |
| 2) Firemen pulled the family from fire. | T <input type="checkbox"/> F <input type="checkbox"/> |
| 3) A truck driver tried to save them. | T <input type="checkbox"/> F <input type="checkbox"/> |
| 4) Firemen put on special clothes. | T <input type="checkbox"/> F <input type="checkbox"/> |

B- Answer the following questions.

- | | |
|---|--------|
| 1) How did the trouble start? | _____. |
| 2) Where did it happen? | _____. |
| 3) What were the people in the car wearing? | _____. |
| 4) Could they leave the car? | _____. |
| 5) Who called 112 immediately? | _____. |
| 6) What did the firemen do first? | _____. |
| 7) Could they save the family? | _____. |
| 8) Where did they take the family? | _____. |

☹ Two men were found guilty for killing the young woman.

☺ Two men were found guilty of killing the young woman.



We use "guilty for murder, robbery, etc.". "guilty of doing something".

ATATÜRK (THE FOUNDER OF THE TURKISH REPUBLIC)

Atatürk, the founder and the first President of the Turkish Republic, was born in Salonika in 1881. He was given the name Mustafa. His father's name was Ali Rıza Effendi and his mother's name was Zübeyde Hanım.

Mustafa went to the army academy when he was 12 and was commissioned as an officer in the army at 21. While he was still a young officer, he formed a secret committee to fight against government corruption.

During World War I, Turkey joined the Germans. At the end of the war, the Empire was stopped of its territories, and the Allies were making plans to come up Turkey itself into independent states and they occupied territories. But Atatürk; now a general in the Turkish Army, had the support of the Turkish People: He drove back the allied forces. He founded the Republic of Turkey and served as its first President from 1923 until his death. Later he was called Gazi Mustafa Kemal Pasha. The Turkish Grand National Assembly gave him the surname Atatürk, which means "Father Turk" or "Father of Turks", in 1933.

At once he began reforming Turkey. Amazing reforms in the Turkish political, social, economical and religious life took place under his forceful leadership. He gave Turkish women their freedom and abolished some customs. He outlawed polygamy. He eliminated corruption, improved public education and introduced the Roman alphabet for the Turkish language.

Six principles guiding Mustafa Kemal lead his people into the modern political world: Nationalism, Secularism, Populism, Etatism, Republicanism and Revolutionism.

In a speech he made to university students, Atatürk once said:

"The tasks of the Turkish nation, of the Republic and of Turkish nationalism have not yet been completed. It is you who are to complete them. Repeat my words to those who come after you. This is not just my personal wish: it is also the desire of the Turkish nation. Never tire of repeating what I have said to you to the generations to come. The watchword shall be: advancement. Noble Turk, there shall never be a limit to your advancement."

He died at 9:05 am, November 10, 1938.

EXERCISE

A- Answer the following questions.

- 1) Where and when was Atatürk born? _____.
- 2) When was he commissioned as an officer? _____.
- 3) What were the Allies planning? _____.
- 4) When did he found the Republic of Turkey? _____.
- 5) Who gave him the surname "Atatürk"? _____.
- 6) What does Atatürk mean? _____.
- 7) What are the Atatürk's principles? _____.
- 8) When did he die? _____.

☹ I had great difficulty to find the address.

☺ I had great difficulty in finding the address.



We use "have difficulty in doing something".

PEN FRIEND

Main Road, 23/3

Kuşadası

18th April

Dear Liz,

My name is Gönül Çelen and I am 17. I'm from Kuşadası in Aydın. Kuşadası is one of the most popular centres. It's on the Aegean coast. In summer it's full of tourists.

I live with my parents in a house by the sea. My mother's name is Ayşe, and she is a dentist. My father's name is Mehmet, and he is a doctor. They are very busy. My brother's name is Ali. He is twenty years old, and he is a university student. I am a student at a private college. My favourite subject is English. I am going to take the university exam in June. I want to be a journalist.

I like living by the sea and I spend most of my time on the beach. I love swimming and chatting to friends. I like pop music very much and my favourite pop singer is Teoman.

What's life like in your town? Tell me about you and your family.

Looking forward to hearing from you soon.

Best wishes.

Gönül.

EXERCISES

A- Decide True (T) or False (F).

- | | | |
|-----------------------------------|----------------------------|----------------------------|
| 1) Kuşadası is a touristic place. | T <input type="checkbox"/> | F <input type="checkbox"/> |
| 2) Gönül can speak English. | T <input type="checkbox"/> | F <input type="checkbox"/> |
| 3) She is a university student. | T <input type="checkbox"/> | F <input type="checkbox"/> |
| 4) She doesn't like music. | T <input type="checkbox"/> | F <input type="checkbox"/> |

B- Answer the following questions.

- | | |
|---|--------|
| 1) What's Gönül's job? | _____. |
| 2) Does she like living in Kuşadası? | _____. |
| 3) Does she often see her parents? | _____. |
| 4) Where does she spend most of her time? | _____. |
| 5) Who is her favourite singer? | _____. |
| 6) Who does she live with? | _____. |
| 7) How old is her brother? | _____. |
| 8) Does she want to learn about Liz? | _____. |

☹ It is difficult to fill the university entrance exam form.

☺ It is difficult to fill in the university entrance exam form.



We use "fill in a form" in British English.

THE WRECKAGE

On a sunny day, a house fell in. The man was having construction workers add a new room to his house. The workers were not there when it happened. They were taking a break.

People asked the owner of the house: "What were you doing when the house fell in?"

He answered; "I and my children were talking in the garden and my wife was preparing the lunch when we heard a loud noise."

The owner's wife and children were crying while their father was talking to the people. The woman said: "I was preparing the lunch when I heard some noise and rushed out of the house. As soon as I left the house, it collapsed. I didn't know what to do. My husband tried to calm me down while I was crying."

It was our first house so it was very important for us. Thank God nobody was injured.

Neighbours came together to find a way to help the family. They decided to rebuild the house and to put them up as guests in their home until they built the new house. The family was very happy and the man said: "A friend in need is a friend indeed."

EXERCISES

A- Decide True (T) or False (F).

- | | |
|-------------------------------------|---|
| 1) Two people were injured. | T <input type="checkbox"/> F <input type="checkbox"/> |
| 2) They were building a new room. | T <input type="checkbox"/> F <input type="checkbox"/> |
| 3) Children were in the garden. | T <input type="checkbox"/> F <input type="checkbox"/> |
| 4) The neighbours weren't friendly. | T <input type="checkbox"/> F <input type="checkbox"/> |

B- Answer the following questions.

- | | |
|---|--------|
| 1) What was the weather like? | _____. |
| 2) What was the woman doing when it collapsed? | _____. |
| 3) Who tried to calm down the woman? | _____. |
| 4) What did the people ask the man? | _____. |
| 5) What were the workers doing when it collapsed? | _____. |
| 6) Why was the house so important for them? | _____. |
| 7) What did the man say in the end? | _____. |
| 8) What did the woman do when she heard some noise? | _____. |

☹ In our bedroom, there was an alive lizard.

😊 In our bedroom, there was a live lizard.



When we talk about animals, things; we use "live". A live football match, etc..

THE ACCIDENTS

Drive carefully and slowly when you are driving in the streets, particularly in crowded shopping streets. When you see a bus or a car stopped, watch out for people coming from behind parked or stopped cars or from the places you might not be able to see them.

Seventy-five percent of pedestrians died or seriously injured are children or old people. They may not guess the speed very well, and may step into the road when the drivers do not expect them. Don't forget that; blind or disabled people need more time to cross the road.

Drive slowly near schools, and parks, and look out for children getting on or off school buses and coming out of the park.

When coming to a zebra crossing, be ready to slow down or stop to let people cross. Give signal to other drivers that you mean to slow down. Never overtake just before a zebra crossing.

EXERCISES

A- Decide True (T) or False (F).

- 1) Seventy percent of pedestrians were killed. T ☐ F ☐
- 2) Disabled people need more time to cross. T ☐ F ☐
- 3) You needn't drive slowly near a park. T ☐ F ☐
- 4) You mustn't overtake before a zebra crossing. T ☐ F ☐

B- Answer the following questions.

- 1) Where must you drive carefully particularly? _____.
- 2) What must you do when you see a car stopped? _____.
- 3) What must you look out for near schools or parks? _____.
- 4) Can the children or old people guess the speed well? _____.
- 5) What must you do before a zebra crossing? _____.
- 6) What do you mean when you give signal? _____.
- 7) What mustn't you do before a zebra crossing? _____.
- 8) What percent of pedestrians are killed or injured? _____.

☹ They met the girl at the airport at her arrival in Istanbul.

☺ They met the girl at the airport on her arrival in Istanbul.



We use "on" before someone's arrival.

HAYDARPAŞA STATION

Haydarpaşa Station, in Istanbul, is the biggest and the busiest railway station of Turkey. Thousands of passengers use it everyday. It is very busy between 7 and 9 in the morning and between 5 and 7 in the afternoon. Most people go to work by train. Some of the trains go to different cities in Anatolia. The Anatolian Express, the Blue Express, the Lake Van Express are the most modern trains. They are much more comfortable than the other trains.

At Haydarpaşa Station there are a lot of problems everyday. Some people lose their luggage, some children get lost, and some people have their wallets stolen. There are some pickpockets at the station. That's why, a lot of policemen and security guards patrol in the station. The police always warn the people to be careful. There are a lot of telephone boxes at the station and they are always busy. All the time, people try to get tickets, want to learn about fares and the time of trains to different places. In every fifteen minutes a train departs from the station and another arrives. It is always noisy because of the noise of trains, people, salesmen and the whistle of conductors.

EXERCISES

A- Decide True (T) or False (F).

- | | |
|--|---|
| 1) It's very peaceful at Haydarpaşa Station. | T <input type="checkbox"/> F <input type="checkbox"/> |
| 2) Blue express is very comfortable. | T <input type="checkbox"/> F <input type="checkbox"/> |
| 3) A lot of security guards patrol there. | T <input type="checkbox"/> F <input type="checkbox"/> |
| 4) There are some thieves at the station. | T <input type="checkbox"/> F <input type="checkbox"/> |

B- Answer the following questions.

- | | |
|--|--------|
| 1) Why do the police warn the people? | _____. |
| 2) When is the station very busy? | _____. |
| 3) How often does a train depart from the station? | _____. |
| 4) How often does a train arrive at the station? | _____. |
| 5) Are there any problems at the station? | _____. |
| 6) What do the people try to learn? | _____. |
| 7) What happens to some children? | _____. |
| 8) What do the policemen and security guards do? | _____. |

☹ My son always loses his belt.

☺ My son always loses his belt.



"Loose" means; "to leave free" or "unfastened".

FRIENDS

People often have to travel to the another cities to study or to work. Metin is going to get on the bus and travel to Istanbul for his new job. He is saying “goodbye” to his friends Baki and Cemil.

The three friends have known one another since their childhood. They have been friends for many years. They have lived in the same house for five years. They have studied and gone to school together. They have just finished the school and started to look for a job. Metin has found a new job in Istanbul. Baki has found a job in Ankara and Cemil has stayed in the same city, because he hasn't found a job yet.

They have been an important part of one another's lives, so it's difficult to say, “good-bye”. For many years, they have shared everything; their good and bad times, hopes and feelings.

Three of them are very sorry and they are crying. They are promising one another to come together in every opportunity. They will miss each other very much and never forget the days they have spent together.

EXERCISES

A- Decide True (T) or False (F).

- 1) They have known each other for a short time. T ☐ F ☐
- 2) They have done everything all together. T ☐ F ☐
- 3) Baki has found a job in Istanbul. T ☐ F ☐
- 4) They are very happy now. T ☐ F ☐

B- Answer the following questions.

- 1) Where have they lived for five years? _____.
- 2) Where has Baki found a job? _____.
- 3) Has Cemil found a job in Ankara? _____.
- 4) Why has Cemil stayed in the same city? _____.
- 5) Where are they now? _____.
- 6) Is Metin going to travel by train? _____.
- 7) Have they shared only good times? _____.
- 8) Why do people often have to travel to another cities? _____.

☹ The boy walks like his father does.

😊 The boy walks as his father does.



“As” is used as conjunction and followed by a noun or pronoun.

TRANSPORTATION

For many years in my village, horses used to be the only form of transportation. Before the age of modern trucks, cars, buses and trains, horses used to carry all the goods for trading. A horse often used to carry as much as 200 kilos and it could travel 50 kilometres a day. This form of transportation used to be so important that people took care of the horses like a member of the family.

Now, modern trucks, buses and trains travel all over the country. A truck can carry as much weight as 100 horses. In addition, people use special cars for their load. Refrigerator cars carry food and tanker cars carry oil.

Air travel has changed a lot, too. The first planes were big planes with one engine. The engines of the planes sometimes used to stop in the middle of the trip and a lot of people died. But now modern airplanes make air travel possible for everybody. Nowhere in the world is more than 20 hours away by jet. People never used to eat, sleep, read magazines or watch films on air planes.

In the future planes may travel to moon or to the other planets for a weekend holiday. Technology is improving incredibly.

EXERCISES

A- Decide True (T) or False (F).

- | | |
|---|---|
| 1) Horses used to be very important | T <input type="checkbox"/> F <input type="checkbox"/> |
| 2) A horse used to carry more than a man. | T <input type="checkbox"/> F <input type="checkbox"/> |
| 3) People didn't take care of horses. | T <input type="checkbox"/> F <input type="checkbox"/> |
| 4) A lorry can carry tonnes of weight. | T <input type="checkbox"/> F <input type="checkbox"/> |

B- Answer the following questions.

- 1) What used to be the only form of transportation? _____.
- 2) How fast did the horse use to move? _____.
- 3) How much weight did the horses use to carry? _____.
- 4) How much weight can a modern truck carry? _____.
- 5) How did the people behave the horse? _____.
- 6) How were the first planes? _____.
- 7) Can we watch films on air planes now? _____.
- 8) Has transportation changed a lot? _____.

☹ Students believe their teacher.

☺ Students believe in their teacher.



If you want to show faith, we always use "in" after believe.

ANIMALS

A university professor has recently made several experiments with different animals to find out which was the most intelligent. He found out that the monkey was more intelligent than the other animals.

In one experiment, the professor put a monkey in a room where there were several small boxes. Some boxes were inside other boxes. One small box had some food inside of it. The professor wanted to watch the monkey and to find out how long it would take the monkey to find the food. The professor left the room. He waited a few minutes outside the door. Then he knelt down and put his eye to the keyhole. What did he see? To his surprise, he found himself looking directly into the eye of the monkey. The monkey was on the other side of the door, looking at the professor through the keyhole.

Nowadays, dogs are used for different aims. The police use the dogs to find out drugs. The dogs are also used to find out the lost people, or the people under the wreckage. Dolphins help the sailors to find their way. Animals help people a lot.

EXERCISES

A- Decide True (T) or False (F).

- 1) The monkeys are as intelligent as other animals. T ☐ F ☐
- 2) There weren't any food in the boxes. T ☐ F ☐
- 3) Professor waited for a few minutes. T ☐ F ☐
- 4) Dolphins help people. T ☐ F ☐

B- Answer the following questions.

- 1) Why did the professor do some experiments? _____.
- 2) Where did the professor put the monkey? _____.
- 3) How long did the professor wait? _____.
- 4) Do the animals help people? _____.
- 5) Why are the dogs used nowadays? _____.
- 6) How do the dolphins help sailors? _____.
- 7) What other aims are the dogs used for? _____.
- 8) What was the monkey doing on the other side of the door? _____.

☹ Are you pleased from our service?

☺ Are you pleased with our service?



We always use "pleased with".

EROSION

Erosion has a great impact on the geology of a planet. It wears rock and soil away and changes the landscape. Agents of erosion include water, ice, wind, and chemical action.

Erosion breaks up rocks and moves sand and stones. It wears down mountains and fills valleys with finely ground sediment and sand. Over long periods of time the products of erosion can become rock again

Rain drops are formed when water vapour in the air condenses around tiny dust particles or ice crystals. Clouds form as the drops of water grow. As rain falls, it returns evaporated water to the surface of the planet, scattering it over the land masses so that plants can grow nearly everywhere on earth.

Rainfall on earth varies between almost none to over 200 inches a year. Humans live in places with 20 inches or more of rainfall a year, though they can survive with less if they use irrigation or very special dry land farming practices that capture water and deliver it to the roots of their crop

When rain falls on the ground some of it soaks into the soil. It moistens the soil particles and makes them easier to move. A heavy rain will stir up the surface of the soil and make mud of the small particles. The water that is not absorbed runs off the soil, carrying a little of the soil with it.

Water flows downhill, and is always seeking a lower path. A small stream has more force than individual rain drops or melting snow. It begins to stir up larger particles and carry them away.

Rain seeps into the cracks, and when winter comes the water freezes. Freezing water expands, and it pushes the walls of the cracks apart, making the cracks wider.

Tides show erosion in action. The constant movement of the waves shows us how sand grains are tumbled, and the returning water traces miniature drainage channels in the sand. Waves also erode cliffs along the beaches. They undercut the cliffs, and eventually the cliffs fall. Wind picks up dust and sand. Sand storms can act like sand blasters if the wind is moving fast enough. Sometimes when people are driving in the desert they drive through a sand storm which erodes all the paint off their cars!

There are chemicals in the air. Some of these chemicals can corrode rocks, and fairly quickly, too. The names on marble gravestones can be dissolved away in only a couple of centuries. Carvings on buildings are being digested by chemicals that cause air pollution.

Another way that chemical action can break down rock is through crystallization. If salt water, for instance, gets into cracks in rocks, the salt crystallizes when the water evaporates. The tiny crystals push against the sides of the cracks and slowly widen them.

☹ I can play guitar.

☺ I can play the guitar.



We always use “the” before musical instruments.

1- Match the following words with their definitions.

- | | |
|--------------|--|
| 1- Geology | a- scenery as seen in a broad view |
| 2- Landscape | b- continue to live or exist |
| 3- Sediment | c- steep rock-face especially on a coast |
| 4- Vapour | d- wear away, destroy gradually |
| 5- Evaporate | e- made by or employing chemistry or chemicals |
| 6- Survive | f- narrow opening; break or split |
| 7- Chemical | g- turn from solid or liquid into vapour |
| 8- Crack | h- science of the earth's crust, origin of its rocks |
| 9- Tide | i- grounds; dregs ; matter deposited on the land by water or wind |
| 10- Tumble | j- periodic rise and fall of the sea due to the attraction of the moon and sun |
| 11- Cliff | k- moisture or other substances diffused or suspended in air |
| 12- Erode | l- (to cause) to fall suddenly, clumsily or headlong |

a.... b.... c.... d.... e.... f.... g.... h.... i.... j.... k.... l....

2- Answer the following questions.

- 1- How does erosion affect the geology of the planet?
.....
- 2- How does erosion affect the rocks in advance?
.....
- 3- What does the continuing movement of the waves show us?
.....
- 4- What other effects do the waves cause?
.....
- 5- Why are the names on marble gravestones dissolved away?
.....
- 6- How does the salt crystallize?
.....
- 7- What happens to the sand and stones that erosion carries?
.....
- 8- How much rainfall is needed for humans to live?
.....
- 9- What happens when it rains?
.....
- 10- What does the freezing water do to rocks and the walls of cracks?
.....
- 11- Are there any institutions in you country that fight against the erosion? What does it do?
Can you give some information about its activities?
.....
.....
.....
.....
.....

MANDELA, NELSON (Rolihlahla) 1918-

South African politician and lawyer, president since 1994. He became president of the African National Congress (ANC) 1991. Imprisoned in 1964, as organizer of the then banned ANC, he became a symbol of unity for the worldwide anti-apartheid movement. In Feb 1990 he was released, the ban on the ANC having been lifted, and entered into negotiations with the government about a multiracial future for South Africa. In May 1994 he was sworn in as South Africa's first post-apartheid president after the ANC won 62.65% of the vote in universal-suffrage elections. He shared the Nobel Prize for Peace 1993 with South African president F W de Klerk.

Mandela was born near Umbata, South of Lesotho, the son of a local chief. In a trial of several ANC leaders, he was acquitted of treason in 1961, but was once more arrested in 1964 and given a life sentence on charges of sabotage and plotting to overthrow the government. In Feb 1990 he was released from prison on the orders of state president F W de Klerk and in July 1991 was elected, unopposed, to the presidency of the ANC. In Dec 1991 the ANC began constitutional negotiations with the government and in Feb 1993 Mandela and President de Klerk agreed to the formation of a government of national unity after free, non-racial elections (later scheduled for April 1994).

Mandela married the South African civil-rights activist Winnie Mandela 1955 (the couple separated 1992).

“Our deepest fear is not that we are inadequate. Our deepest fear is that we are powerful beyond measure. It is our light, not our darkness, that most frightens us. We ask ourselves, who am I to be brilliant, gorgeous, talented, and fabulous? Actually, who are you not to be? You are a child of God. Your playing small doesn't serve the world. There is nothing enlightened about shrinking so that other people won't feel insecure around you. We are born to make manifest the Glory of God that is within us. It's not just in some of us, it's in everyone, and as we let our light shine, we unconsciously give other people permission to do the same. As we are liberated from our own fear, our presence automatically liberates others.

Nelson Mandela” “President, South Africa”

Answer the following questions.

- 1- How long did he stay in prison?
.....
- 2- Which negotiations did he enter?
.....
- 3- How was Mandela released from prison?
.....
- 4- What did Mandela struggle for?
.....
- 5- According to Mandela what does most frighten us?
.....
- 6- According to Mandela why are we born?
.....
- 7- According to Mandela how will our presence liberate others?
.....
- 8- What does post-apartheid president mean?
.....

ELEPHANTS

The elephant is the largest animal to walk on Earth. An elephant can carry a load of 550 kilograms. They eat 140 kilograms of food a day. An elephant baby can weight 90 kilograms at birth. Elephants can live up to 70 years.

Elephants can be trained to carry logs with their trunks, and have been used in the forestry industry in Asia for many years. Elephants also use their trunks for drinking water, bathing, and eating and communicating.

Recently it was discovered that elephants can communicate over a distance of several miles using infrasonic sounds inaudible to humans. Elephants use their ears as a cooling system. Blood flows through veins in the ears and as the elephant flaps his ears, the blood cools and flows through his body to cool off other parts.

Elephant feet are large and round. They distribute the large animal's weight effectively. In the past, elephants were killed and their feet were made into umbrella stands and small tables for tourists. Now elephants are protected by special laws.

There are two kinds of elephants: the African elephant and the Indian elephant. African elephants can be identified by the larger ears. The African elephant grows up to 10 feet tall and weighs as much as 5 tonnes.

The Indian elephant grows up to 3 metres tall, and weighs up to 3.5 tonnes. It's easier to identify because of its smaller ears. Most circus elephants are Indian elephants. Another name for the Indian elephant is the Asian elephant.

Unfortunately, there is a growing conflict between elephants and humans as more of the elephants' habitat is developed. Elephants can destroy the crops of an entire village in a single night, and this also causes conflict. At the moment, there are about 600,000 elephants remaining in Africa.

The greatest threat to elephants is the ivory trade. Most commercial ivory comes from elephant's tusks. From 1979 to 1989 was a bad time for African elephants. About 70,000 wild elephants were killed for ivory each year. In 1989 an international treaty limited the trade in ivory, decreasing the number of elephants killed, but elephants are still being killed for ivory. Please don't *ever* buy anything made from ivory! Don't even buy anything that *looks* like ivory!

Answer the following questions.

1- How much does a baby elephant weigh at birth?

.....

2- What do the elephants also use their trunks for?

.....

3- What do the hunters make umbrella holders out of?

.....

4- What part of an elephant's body is used to cool the elephant?

.....

5- What animal is the most dangerous to an elephant?

☹ The teacher insisted to give an exam.

☺ The teacher insisted on giving an exam.



We always use "insist on doing something".

PHONE KEEPS RINGING

My friend Fatih had a serious telephone problem. But unlike most people he did something about it.

The brand-new-Lake-Van hotel opened nearby and had acquired almost the same telephone number as Fatih.

From the moment the hotel opened, Fatih was besieged by calls not for him. Since he had the same phone number for years, he felt that he had a case to persuade the hotel management change its number.

Naturally, the management refused claiming that it could not change its stationery.

The phone company was not helpful, either. A number was a number and just because a customer was getting someone else's calls 24 hours a day didn't make it responsible. After his pleas fell on deaf ears, Fatih decided to take matters into his own hands.

At 7 o'clock in the early morning the phone rang. Someone from Safranbolu was calling the hotel and asked for a room for the following weekend. Faith said "No problem. How many nights?"

A few hours later Samsun checked in. A teacher wanted a suite with two bedrooms for a week for their honeymoon. Emboldened Fatih said the Presidential Suite on the 6th floor was available for 100\$ a night. The teacher said that he would take it and asked if the hotel wanted a deposit. "No, that won't be necessary", Fatih said. "We trust you."

The next day was a busy one for Fatih. In the morning, he booked a car manufacturer's convention for Memorial Day weekend, a college prom and a reunion of graduates of an Anatolian High school.

He turned on his answering machine during lunch time so that he could watch his favourite soup opera, but his biggest challenge came in the afternoon when a father called to book the ballroom for his son's birthday party the next week.

Fatih assured the man that it would be no problem and asked if he would be providing the flowers or did he want the hotel to take care of it. The father said that he would prefer the hotel to handle the floral arrangements. Then the question of valet parking came up. Once again Fatih was helpful. "There is no charge for valet parking but we always recommend that the client tips the drivers"

Within a few weeks, the Lake-Van Hotel was a disaster area. People kept showing up for birthdays, weddings and reunion parties and were all told there were no such events.

Fatih had his final revenge when he read in the local paper that the hotel might go bankrupt. His phone rang and an executive from the Lake-Van hotel said, "We are prepared to offer you 100.000\$ for the hotel."

Fatih replied "I'll take it, but only if you change the phone number."

☹ My friend can play the football very well.

☺ My friend can play football very well.



We don't use "the" before sports.

EXERCISES

A – Decide true (T) or False (F).

- | | | |
|--|----------------------------|----------------------------|
| 1- Most people did something about it. | T <input type="checkbox"/> | F <input type="checkbox"/> |
| 2- The hotel management was interested in the problem. | T <input type="checkbox"/> | F <input type="checkbox"/> |
| 3- The phone company solved the problem | T <input type="checkbox"/> | F <input type="checkbox"/> |
| 4- Fatih answered all the telephones and checked in. | T <input type="checkbox"/> | F <input type="checkbox"/> |
| 5- Everything went wrong after Fatih's check in. | T <input type="checkbox"/> | F <input type="checkbox"/> |

B- Answer the following questions.

- 1- Why were the people angry with the hotel management?
.....
- 2- How much was the presidential suit a night? Was it cheap or expensive?
.....
- 3- Why did so many people want to check in?
.....
- 4- Why did Fatih do so? Was he right or wrong?
.....
- 5- Have you ever received wrong calls? What did you do?
.....

C- Match the following words with their definitions.

- | | |
|-----------------|--|
| 1- Brand new | a- great or sudden misfortune; catastrophe |
| 2- Besiege | b- completely new |
| 3- Embolden | c- putting into order |
| 4- Manufacturer | d-encourage |
| 5- Convention | e-retaliation for an offence or injury |
| 6- Challenge | f-person or firm responsible for manufacturing goods |
| 7- Arrangement | g-harass with requests |
| 8- Revenge | h- legally declared insolvent |
| 9- Bankrupt | i- call to respond |
| 10- Disaster | j-conference of people with a common interest |

a.... b.... c.... d.... e.... f.... g.... h.... i.... j....

☹ My parents are living in Samsun.

☺ My parents live in Samsun.



We use "live" in simple present tense.

Dear Richard

We are happy to be here in Istanbul for our honeymoon. We are having a fantastic time. We are staying in the Old City at the Sultan Hotel. At the moment, we are eating fish and bread under the Galata Bridge in Eminönü and enjoying the spectacular view of the Maiden Tower, Topkapı Palace, and the Galata Tower.

The weather is very hot and perfect for sightseeing and a Bosphorus tour. The most famous sightseeing in Istanbul are the Blue Mosque, the Ayasofya, the Cistern and the Topkapı Palace. After visiting these wonderful sights you can go up to the Çamlıca hill to have 5 o'clock tea and enjoy the sunset.

Turkish people are really friendly, hospitable and kind to tourists. Most of them are good looking with big black eyes and moustache.

The food is delicious. We like eating kebabs, seafood and drinking rakı. The desserts are also delicious; baklava, sütlaç and Turkish delight. We love them.

Tomorrow, we are going to Antalya to swim and sunbathe. I am really looking forward to it. Antalya is the hottest and best place for the tourists.

We think that you should come here one day. We are sure that you would love to be here. We will show you all the pictures we took and you will decide yourself.

See you soon

Angela and George

Write a letter to your friend about a city you have visited in your summer holiday

.....

.....

.....

.....

.....

.....

.....

.....

.....

.....

.....

.....

.....

I'm writing to ask for more information about the Poem competition which I saw advertised in "**Varlık**". I would be very interested in participating but require further details.

Finally, could you please inform me whether there is restriction for topic?

Yours faithfully.

Now you are going to write a formal letter for more information about summer course for teenagers (accommodation, sport activities, food, Money)

This image shows a full page of primary-ruled paper. It features multiple sets of horizontal lines designed to guide handwriting. Each set consists of three lines: two solid dotted lines forming the top and bottom boundaries, and a central dashed line indicating the height for capital letters. The pattern repeats down the entire page, providing ample space for practicing letter formation and writing.



LIFE-LONG FRIENDS

We share life, our sorrow, and happiness with them. A good friend has a lot of qualities. The most three important of these are being loyal, helpful and trustful

In my opinion they must be loyal. A good friend never lets you down. She always stands by you, and she never disappoints you.

In addition a good friend is helpful. She always supports you when you have problem. She listens to you and advices you.

Furthermore, a good friend is trustful. She never gossips behind you. You are sure of her, so you can share whatever you want.

As a conclusion, a good friend is loyal and helpful. You feel confident when you are with her. Life is meaningless without a good friend.

Now you are going to write the qualities of a good teacher (Professional, trustful, have a good communication)

.....

.....

.....

.....

.....

.....

.....

.....

.....

.....

.....

.....

.....

.....

.....

.....

.....

27, Barbaros Street
Zümrüt Apt
Beşiktaş

The Personnel Officer
Secure Guards Ltd
İstiklal Street No: 56
İSTANBUL

Dear Sir,

I am applying for the post of Security Guard advertised in "The Daily News" yesterday and I am enclosing a copy of my CV as requested.

As you can see, I have worked for six years as the Mayor's personal bodyguard and before that I was in the army. My commanding officer and the Mayor can both supply you with references and their addresses can be found on my CV.

My experience in the army included working in Northern Cyprus and the Egirdir Commando School. I have also accompanied the Mayor on his overseas trips. I notice that the advertised vacancy involves working overseas and I am very keen on travelling, which is why I have chosen to apply for this post.

I hope you will give my application serious consideration and I look forward to hearing from you.

Yours faithfully,

Richard Strong

Write a letter of application to a company for the advertisement you have seen on a newspaper.

.....

.....

.....

.....

.....

.....

.....

.....

.....

.....

.....

.....

.....

.....

.....

.....

Borrowing something

Caner: Kemal, can I borrow your car at the weekend?

Kemal: Why do you want to borrow the car?

Caner: I'm going to the beach with my girlfriend

Kemal: Last time you borrowed it you had an accident and the tyres were badly torn.

Caner: I promise I'll drive carefully this time.

Kemal: And the petrol tank was almost empty

Caner: I'll fill it up before I get home

Kemal: Well, OK then, provided you're home by 8. I'm going out Sunday evening and I need the car.

Caner: Great. Thanks Kemal, I'll be home by 7:30.

Borrowing something

.....

.....

.....

.....

.....

.....

.....

.....

.....

.....

.....

.....

.....

.....

.....

.....

.....

.....

.....

.....

.....

At the clothes shop

Salesman: May I help you?

Customer: Yes, I'm looking for a nice dress for a wedding next week

Salesman: Which colour would you prefer?

Customer: Blue.

Salesman: And what size are you?

Customer: I'm not sure. Can you measure me?

Salesman: You're 38" waist. How about this?

Customer: What material is it?

Salesman: Cotton.

Customer: Have you got anything in Wool?

Salesman: Yes, this dress is wool.

Customer: Can I try it on?

Salesman: Of course. The changing room's over there.

Customer: It's a lovely dress. How much is it?

Salesman: It's pure wool, so it's quite expensive. I am afraid it's €100.

Customer: I'll buy it.

At the clothes shop

.....

.....

.....

.....

.....

.....

.....

.....

.....

.....

.....

.....

.....

.....

.....

.....

.....

.....

.....

.....

.....

Salesman: Yes we do.

.....

Mary: Yeah, I'll give you a call.

[illegible]

This image shows a full page of white paper with horizontal dotted lines, typical of primary-ruled notebook paper. The lines are evenly spaced and run across the width of the page. There are no margins, text, or other markings on the paper.

Receptionist: Good evening. How can I help you?

Tourist: Good evening. I'd like to book a room. Have you got any rooms?

Receptionist: Yes, single, double or twin?

Tourist: Single, please.

Receptionist: Would you like a room with a shower or a bath?

Tourist: With a bath please.

Receptionist: That'll be £50 a night, including breakfast. When will you check in?

Tourist: We will check in now and stay a couple of days.

Receptionist: Room 502.

Tourist: What time is breakfast?

Receptionist: Breakfast is from 7 to 9.

Tourist: And what time is dinner?

Receptionist: Dinner's from 6:30 to 8:30.

You'd better hurry. The restaurant closes in 15 minutes.

Tourist: Thanks.

Booking a flight

Passenger: I'd like to book a flight to Baku please.

Secretary: Which airline would you like to use?

Passenger: Which is the cheapest?

Secretary: When do you want to travel?

Passenger: Tomorrow.

Secretary: Would you like a return ticket?

Passenger: Yes, I'm coming back next week.

Secretary: Let me see.. Onur air £150, but THY is the most expensive flight at £220,

Passenger: How long does the Onur flight take?

Secretary: Total time is 3.5 hours, THY takes 2.5 hours.

Passenger: I may as well go with THY then.

Secretary: How many seats would you like?

Passenger: Two please and could we have vegetarian meals?

Secretary: Sure, there's no extra charge.

Hotel

[illegible]

Booking a flight

This image shows a blank sheet of white paper designed for primary-level writing. At the top center, there are two identical red circles, each with a diameter of approximately 20 pixels. Below these circles, the page is filled with horizontal ruling lines. Each ruling line consists of a solid black dot followed by a series of small, evenly spaced black dots, creating a dashed effect. There are 20 such ruling lines spanning the width of the page. The overall design is clean and minimalist, typical of educational materials for young children.

At the check-in desk

Officer: Good morning, may I have your ticket please?

Passenger: Certainly. Can I take this as hand luggage?

Officer: Yes, that'll be fine.

Passenger: And can I have a window seat in the smoking section?

Officer: I'm afraid this is a non-smoking flight sir. But you can have a window seat. Here's your boarding pass. Have a nice flight.

Passenger: Thank you.

At passport control

Policeman: May I see your passport please?

Passenger: Here you are.

Policeman: What is the purpose of your visit?

Passenger: I'm here for a conference

Policeman: How long will you be staying?

Passenger: Three days.

Policeman: Thank you very much. Enjoy your stay

At customs

Officer: Do you have anything to declare, sir?

Passenger: Just some cigarettes and some whisky.

Officer: How much whisky do you have?

Passenger: Three bottles.

Officer: That's fine, and how many cigarettes?

Passenger: I have 200 packets.

Officer: I'm afraid you're only allowed 100 cigarettes. You'll have to pay duty on the rest.

Passenger: Oh! How much is it?

Officer: It is £10.00 plus V.A.T. a total of £11.80.

Passenger: Here you are.

At the check-in desk

.....

.....

.....

.....

.....

.....

.....

.....

.....

.....

At passport control

.....

.....

.....

.....

.....

.....

.....

.....

.....

.....

At customs

.....

.....

.....

.....

.....

.....

.....

.....

.....

.....

.....

.....

.....

.....

.....

.....

.....

.....

.....

.....

.....

Ali: Where were you last week?
Murat: I was in Budapest.
Ali: Who were you with?
Murat: I was with my girlfriend, Hülya.
Ali: What was the name of the hotel?
Murat: The Continental.
Ali: Was it comfortable?
Murat: Yes, it was.
Ali: What was your room number?
Murat: It was 520.
Ali: Did you visit anywhere?
Murat: Yes. We visited Esztergom and the Basilica.
Ali: Was the Esztergom fortress impressive?
Murat: Yes, it was. It reminded the old days there.

Clerk: Good morning, can I help you?
Customer: Yes, I'd like to open a deposit account.
Clerk: Certainly Sir. Would you like a time deposit or a demand deposit account?
Customer: What's the difference?
Clerk: You can open a demand deposit account with just 5million. The account comes with a cash card so you can withdraw your money at any time. The time deposit account currently pays 8% interest. For the time deposit d account you need a minimum of 50 million, and you have to give 14 days notice to withdraw money.
Customer: I'll go for the demand deposit account.
Clerk: How much would you like to deposit?
Customer: 10 million
Clerk: And we'll need two proofs of ID
Customer: I'm sorry. I don't have it on me. I'll come back in the afternoon.

[illegible][illegible]

Manager: Good morning, I'm the manager, how can I help you?

Customer: We'd like to apply for a mortgage.

Manager: Have you found a property you're interested in?

Customer: Yes we have.

Manager: How much would you like to borrow?

Customer: Well, the property is 50 billion.

Manager: So you need a 50 billion loan. Do you have an account with this bank?

Customer: Yes, we both have accounts here. I've had my account for over ten years.

Manager: How much do you both earn?

Customer: I earn 3 billion and my wife earns 2.5 billion

Manager: That's fine. Now would you like to complete this form?

Officer: Central Police Station. Can I help you?

Woman: I hope so. My house has been burgled.

Officer: Where do you live?

Woman: On Cumhuriyet Street.

Officer: When did you realise the burglary?

Woman: When I got home from work at 5 o'clock.

Officer: Was anything stolen?

Woman: Yes. All my jewellery's gone, and some money too.

Officer: How did they get in?

Woman: They forced the back door.

Officer: Has anybody seen them?

Woman: Yes I have.

Officer: Can you identify them?

Woman: One of them was medium. He had short brown hair, and he was in his 30's. I couldn't see the other one clearly.

Officer: An officer will be round in about 10 minutes. Please don't touch anything.

[illegible][illegible]

Salesman: Good morning, I'm doing a survey on family life. Could you spare a few moments to answer some questions?

Housewife: Well, I'm rather busy....

Salesman: It'll only take a minute or two.
Are you married?

Housewife: Yes, I am.

Salesman: And do you have any children?

Housewife: Yes, two.

Salesman: Have you ever thought about what would happen to your family if you die, or you're taken ill?

Housewife: No, I haven't.

Salesman: Let me tell you about our family protection plan.

Housewife: I really must be.....

Salesman: For only £50 a month this policy covers all medical fees and provides your family with an income equal to your salary in the event of your death.

Housewife: I already have insurance, thank you.

Salesman: Ah but when did you last increase your premiums? The cost of living is rising all the time and no other policy is as generous as ours.

Housewife: I really can't afford any more insurance.

Salesman: But can you afford not to? Just think about your wife and children if anything happens to you.

Housewife: As I said.....

Salesman: As a special offer, for this week only, we can offer you free cover for three months. Just sign here and your policy will start today. You can cancel any time in the next three months and it won't cost you a penny.

Housewife: I can cancel any time?

Salesman: Yes. Just return the cancellation form. There's nothing to lose.

Housewife: Oh, very well then

Selling

[illegible]

Waiter: Good evening.
Customer: A table for two please.
Waiter: Certainly, just here, sir.
Customer: Could we sit by the window?
Waiter: I'm sorry. The window tables are all reserved

Waiter: Are you ready to order, sir?
Customer: Yes. I'll have tomato soup for starters and my wife would like prawn cocktail.
Waiter: One tomato soup and one prawn cocktail. What would you like for main course?
Customer: I'll have the plaice and my wife would like the shepherd's pie.
Waiter: I'm afraid the plaice is off.
Customer: Oh dear. What do you recommend?
Waiter: The steak pie is very good.
Customer: OK I'll have that.
Waiter: Would you like anything to drink?
Customer: Yes, a bottle of wine please.

Technician: Hi, can I help you?

Customer: Hope so. I bought this television here about three months ago, but the sound and picture quality is awful. The picture is always flickering and there's a dark line down the left-hand side of the screen. And there's an annoying hissing sound in the background.

Technician: Do you have an outside aerial?

Customer: Yes, I do.

Technician: Have you tried adjusting it?

Customer: Several times.

Technician: Hmmmmm. I'll get our engineers to have a look at it.

Customer: A friend of mine bought the same model here and had exactly the same problems. I want a refund.

Technician: I'm afraid it isn't our policy to give refunds, sir.

Customer: I want to see the manager.

[illegible][illegible]

[illegible]

STUDENT'S PART

NAME:

NUMBER:

CLASS:

TEACHER'S PART

DATE:

MARK:

COMMENT:

PROGRESS TEST 1**1- Write the subject pronouns "he, she, we, they". (5 points)**

- a) My father
b) Ali and Cem
c) My mother and I
d) Şule
e) My teacher

2- Use "a" or "an". (6 points)

- a) _____ university b) _____ orange
c) _____ pen d) _____ pencil
e) _____ umbrella e) _____ egg

3- Complete the table. (6 points)

Country	Nationality
a) Turkey	.....
b) Greece	.....
c)	German
d)	English
e) The U.S.A.	.....
f) Italy	.....

4- Use "this", "that", "these" or "those". (4 points.)

- a) _____ is an apple.
b) _____ is a school over there.
c) _____ are cats in that garden.
d) _____ are flowers in my hand.

5- Complete the table. (5 points)

Cardinal	Ordinal
a) One	.....
b) Two	.....
c)	the tenth
d) Eighteen	.....
e)	the fiftieth

6- Write the plurals. (5 points)

- a) man
b) woman
c) country
d) baby
e) watch

7- Write questions for answers. (8 points)

- a)?
My name is Yılmaz.
b)?
I'm 35 years old.
c)?
I'm from Hakkari
d)?
I'm an actor.

8- Put the following verbs into correct order and make questions. (10 points.)

a) You / how / are / old / ? /

b) Where / your / is / friend / from / ? /

c) Is / it / o'clock / nine / ? /

d) They / where / from / are / ? /

e) It / is / today / Sunday / ? /

9- Write the following times. (12 points)

a) 11:00 _____.

b) 10:30 _____.

c) 08:45 _____.

d) 09:15 _____.

e) 15:20 _____.

f) 18:40 _____.

10- Make the following sentences singular. (5 points)

a) They are actors.

b) They are children.

c) My teeth are white.

d) There are two knives on the table.

e) They are our teachers.

11- Answer the following questions. (10 points)

a) What is the second month of the year?

b) What is the first day of the week?

c) Where is your town?

d) What are the winter months?

e) What day is it today?

12- Read the text and answer the questions. (8 points)

My name is John. I am from England. I am forty-five years old. I am quite tall.

a) What is his name?

b) How old is he?

c) Where is he from?

d) Is he tall?

13- Complete the table about yourself and write a paragraph (8 points)

Name: _____.

From: _____.

Age: _____.

Height: _____.

14- Complete the following dialogue. (8 points)

Sally : Hello. I'm Sally. _____ name?

Ben : _____ Ben.

Sally : _____, Ben?

Ben : _____ England. _____ you?

Sally : _____ Canada.

Ben : _____ to meet you.

Sally : _____.

STUDENT'S PART

NAME:

NUMBER:

CLASS:

TEACHER'S PART

DATE:

MARK:

COMMENT:

PROGRESS TEST 2

1- Marisa and Aylin are talking about the seminar. Complete the dialogue using "some" or "any". (10 points)

Marisa: Are there _____ bookshops in the city?

Aylin: Yes there are _____ in the city. But there aren't _____ in the town.

Marisa: How awful! What about the hotels? Are there _____ good hotels?

Aylin: Yes, there are _____ good hotels in the city and in the town.

Marisa: And. What about the teachers?

Aylin: I'm sure there are a lot of good teachers there.

2- Complete the sentences with "are, is aren't, isn't". (5 points)

- a) There _____ four rooms in the house.
- b) There _____ any students in the room.
- c) There _____ a computer in the office.
- d) There _____ a university in my city.
- e) There _____ 250 pages in this book.

3- Complete the paragraph with subject pronouns or possessive adjectives. (6 points.)

My name is Jane. I have got one brother. _____ name's Terry. _____ is quite tall and _____ has got long dark hair. _____ sister's name is Julie. _____ is fifteen and _____ has got long blonde hair.

4- Complete with the correct preposition "in, on, at". (4 points)

- a) _____ five o'clock.
- b) _____ Sunday.
- c) _____ the morning.
- d) _____ June.

5- Answer the following questions. (10 points)

- a) How many pens have you got on your desk?
_____.
- b) Has your teacher got a black bag?
_____.
- c) Has your friend got a dictionary with him/her?
_____.
- d) Has your mother got blonde hair?
_____.
- e) Who has got a computer in his/her room?
_____.

6- Circle the odd word out. (5 points)

- a) Sunday – January – Monday – Friday.
- b) Winter – Summer – Autumn – October.
- c) First – Third – Ten – Second.
- d) Ten – Thirty – Twentieth – Twenty.
- e) North – South – Southeast – West.

7- Ask questions for the following answers. (10 points)

- a) _____?
They are playing *in the school yard*.
- b) _____?
My parents are visiting their friends.
- c) _____?
She is *completing the exercises*.
- d) _____?
Because the blackboard is dirty.
- e) _____?
We are waiting for *the bus*.

8- Find the mistakes and rewrite the sentences. (5 points)

- a) There are a lot of book in my bag.
_____.
- b) Are there some people in the bank?
_____?
- c) Who is play the piano?
_____?
- d) There are some childrens in the park.
_____.
- e) I am going to Ankara on June.
_____.

9- Read the questions in List A and match them with the answers in List B. (10 points)

LIST A

- a) Can you sing well?
b) What's your friend writing?
c) Are there any televisions in the room?
d) Where can people buy books?
e) What is the next month?

LIST B

- 1) a poem.
2) Yes, there is one.
3) At the bookshop.
4) May.
5) No, I can't

a	b	c	d	e

10- Complete the following sentences with suitable verbs in the box in the correct tense. (10 points)

have speak watch wash look

- a) She _____ a western film now.
b) We can _____ lunch at school.
c) _____ you _____ English well?
d) My neighbours _____ their car at the moment.
e) A man _____ at you.

11- Underline the correct word. (5 points)

- a) My sister *like* / *likes* dogs.
b) She *don't* / *doesn't* drink coke.
c) I and my son *swim* / *swims* well.
d) They *study* / *studies* science at school.
e) Does she *watch* / *watches* TV everyday.

12- Put the words into the correct order. (10 points)

- a) My / has / son / brown / got / eyes / .
_____.
- b) I / not / have / long / got / hair / .
_____.
- c) You / have / curly / got / hair / ? /
_____.
- d) They / got / have / sons / two / .
_____.
- e) You / a / have / sister / got / ? /
_____.

13- Answer the following questions. (10 points)

- a) Where can you buy cassettes?
_____.
- b) Who can make good cake?
_____.
- c) What can you learn at school?
_____.
- d) How can you travel to Ankara?
_____.
- e) When can you swim?
_____.

STUDENT'S PART	TEACHER'S PART
NAME:	DATE:
NUMBER:	MARK:
CLASS:	COMMENT:

PROGRESS TEST 3

1- Complete the following sentences in present continuous or present simple. (10 points)

- a) I always _____ (drive) to school.
- b) He _____ (carry) her mother's bag now.
- c) They _____ (buy) all the food at the weekends.
- d) My friend _____ (teach) American literature.
- e) He _____ (like) eating ice-cream.

2- Complete the following sentences with "what, where, what time, who, when, how often, how long, which". (8 points)

- a) _____ is your father's job?
- b) _____ are they listening to?
- c) _____ are you leaving for England?
- d) _____ does your mother get up?
- e) _____ do you take reports?
- f) _____ do you go to the theatre?
- g) _____ can you stay underwater?
- h) _____ is your pen? The red one?

3- Write the past forms of the following verbs. (6 points)

- a) cry _____
- b) cut _____
- c) have _____
- d) climb _____
- e) take _____
- f) get _____

4- Make simple past tense questions and match them with the answers. (15 points)

LIST A

- a) What time/ you / yesterday / get up / ? / _____?
- b) Who / the police / last night / catch / ? / _____?
- c) Invent / who / the / telephone / ? / _____?
- d) Where / she / yesterday / buy / book / ? / _____?
- e) Where / you / born / were / ? / _____?

LIST B

- 1) In Germany.
- 2) The thieves.
- 3) Sir Alexander Graham Bell.
- 4) At 7 o'clock.
- 5) From a bookshop.

a	b	c	d	e

5- Circle the odd word out. (6 points)

- a) Go – Come – Help – Buy.
- b) Study – Watch – Take – Clean.
- c) Am – Is – Are – Was .
- d) Yesterday – Last week – Everyday – Last year.
- e) Book – Pen – Pencil – Desk.
- f) Teacher – Worker – Mother – Driver.

6- Ask the questions. (10 points)

- a) _____?
I was at home.
- b) _____?
With my friends.
- c) _____?
No, Burcu wasn't with us.
- d) _____?
They were at the concert.
- e) _____?
She was with her sister.

7) Find out the mistakes and rewrite the sentences. (10 points)

- a) We caught fish at the weekend.
_____.
- b) They didn't telephoned me yesterday.
_____.
- c) She have got a beautiful house.
_____.
- d) The childs didn't go to the party.
_____.
- e) The school started on September.
_____.

8- Put the following words into right category. (15 points)

Verb	Adverb	Nouns
_____	_____	_____
_____	_____	_____
_____	_____	_____
_____	_____	_____

often	mice	carry	write	always
go	never	country	help	hotel
usually	rarely	teacher	cake	want

9- Answer the following questions. (10 points)

- a) What are you doing at the weekend?
_____.
- b) Do you often do examples in English?
_____.
- c) Have you got any foreign pen-friends?
_____.
- d) When do the trees fall their leaves?
_____.
- e) Who was the school director last year?
_____.
- f) Who advised you to choose this school?
_____.
- g) How was the weather like last weekend?
_____.
- h) When do you usually get up?
_____.
- i) Does your teacher ask easy questions?
_____.
- j) Do you go to school by bus?
_____.

10- Complete the following sentences with the past simple of the verbs. (10 points)

run wash cook dance have X 2
stay visit paint escape

- a) I _____ my hair this morning.
- b) They _____ at home yesterday.
- c) She _____ an accident last month.
- d) We _____ a great time at the party.
- e) Ali _____ ten miles at the weekend.
- f) The cook _____ very delicious meals.
- g) The students _____ to pop music.
- h) Ayşegül _____ this picture.
- i) My father _____ his friend at the hospital.
- j) Two men _____ from this prison.

STUDENT'S PART	TEACHER'S PART
NAME:	DATE:
NUMBER:	MARK:
CLASS:	COMMENT:

PROGRESS TEST 4

1- Complete the conversation with the sentences (a-e) below . (10 points)

A: Good morning. Can I help you?
 B:
 A: Yes of course. Medium or large?
 B:
 A: What colour do you want?
 B:
 A: No, I'm sorry. We have blue one.
 B:
 A: Yes here you are.
 B:

- a) Dark blue, please.
- b) Blue is ok!
- c) Yes. Can I have a pair of tracksuit, please?
- d) Thank you very much.
- e) Medium, please.

2- Complete the following sentences with "my, your, his, her, its, our, their". (10 points)

- a) My boss is in _____ office.
- b) The birds are in _____ cage.
- c) I and my friend are in _____ new house.
- d) It is raining. She hasn't got _____ umbrella.
- e) Did you paint _____ room?

3- Match the sentences with the suitable choice. (10 points)

LIST A

- a) You can watch film.
- b) You can write with.
- c) You can look for new words.
- d) You can have lunch.
- e) You can buy music CD's.

LIST B

- 1) a pen.
- 2) at the restaurant.
- 3) in a dictionary.
- 4) at the cinema.
- 5) at the music shop.

a	b	c	d	e

4- Find the odd word out. (10 points)

- a) Car – Bus – Truck – Plane
- b) Butter – Bread – Cheese – Potato
- c) This – That – Those – Their
- d) Blue – Red – Pink – Think
- e) Spring – Winter – Autumn – August

5- Complete the sentences with "have and has got". (10 points)

- a) Jane _____ a beautiful room.
- b) I _____ a new car.
- c) They _____ a lot of new friends.
- d) My grandparents _____ two houses.
- e) Mike _____ an earache.

**6- Put “don’t” where necessary.
(10 points)**

- a) It’s wet. _____ sit down.
- b) It’s very noisy. _____ be quiet.
- c) You are late. _____ leave home at once.
- d) It’s very cold. _____ open the window.
- e) _____ turn the music up. It’s very slow.
- f) _____ cross. The light is red.
- g) _____ cheat in the exam.
- h) _____ go to school in time.
- i) _____ feed the animals in the zoo.
- j) Please, _____ help me.

**7- Complete the following sentences in
simple past tense. (10 points)**

- a) Where _____ (you / go)
yesterday?
- b) I _____ (go) to a trip
around Turkey.
- c) What _____ (you / do)?
- d) How many cities _____
(you / visit)
- e) I _____ (call) my relatives.

**8- Complete the paragraph with the past
tense of “be” positive or negative
(10 points)**

It _____ a sunny day. We _____ in a green garden and there _____ a lot of people there. There _____ a lot of children, too, but there _____ any cars. We _____ there because people said it _____ a good place for children to play. Suddenly, there _____ a loud bang and my son _____ there. I _____ very worried but in the end I found my son next to the crashed car.

**9- Complete the sentences with “how
many, a few, any, how much, some”.
(10 points)**

- a) _____ windows are there in your room?
- b) _____ tea do you drink a day?
- c) I don’t drink _____ tea.
- d) I drink _____ water.
- e) They have only _____ books.
- f) _____ cheese does she eat?
- g) _____ birds are there in the cage?
- h) There isn’t _____ rice on the plate.
- i) I buy _____ magazines every week.
- j) There were only _____ balloons.

**10- Put the words in the correct order.
First write the questions and then
answer them. (10 points)**

- a) What / going to / she / at / weekend /
the / do / ? /

_____?
- b) Help / she / you / going to / ? /

_____?
- c) You / going to / TV / watch / ? /

_____?
- d) Going to / help / who / you / ? /

_____?
- e) When / going to / have / you / lunch / ? /

_____?

STUDENT'S PART	TEACHER'S PART
NAME:	DATE:
NUMBER:	MARK:
CLASS:	COMMENT:

PROGRESS TEST 5

1- Complete the following sentences using “gerund” or “infinitive” in simple present or simple past. (20 points)

- My son _____
(like / play) football, but he _____
(not like / play) volleyball.
- The taxis _____
(stop / run) at midnight.
- Please, _____
(stop / laugh).
- The workers _____
(want / go on) strike last year.
- I _____ (like / listen),
to music but I _____
(hate / watch) TV.
- My father _____
(not / mind / watch) football matches.
- Hakan _____
(good at / play) football.
- In Summer, we often _____
(go / swim)

2- Rewrite the following sentences using object pronouns. (10 points)

- I lent *my dictionary* to *my friend*.
_____.
- She helps *her mother* at the weekend.
_____.
- The actors liked *the film*.
_____.
- The secretary posted *the letters* to
the company.
_____.
- They invited *my parents* to *the party*.
_____.
- Children tell *their problems* to *their parents*.
_____.

3- Complete the following sentences with “in, on, at, between, opposite, next to”. (10 points)

- I met my friend _____ the concert.
- Ordu is _____ Samsun and Giresun.
- Their house is _____ Yalova.
- Whose picture is _____ the wall?
- Rumeli Castle is _____ the
Anatolian Castle.
- Who is the girl _____ the horse?
- We like going on picnic _____ Spring.
- They are waiting _____ the bus stop.
- Afyon is _____ to Isparta.
- Who is _____ you and your sister in
the picture?

4- Put the following verbs into categories. (10 points)

take travel type write operate
see say climb use cut

Regular

Irregular

5- Answer the following questions. (10 points)

a) When did Atatürk found the Turkish Republic?

b) When did Atatürk open the Turkish Grand National Assembly?

c) When was your father born?

d) What were Atatürk's parents' names?

e) What are your parents' names?

6- Write a paragraph about what you are going to do at the weekend. (10 points)

7- Complete the following letter with the simple present, simple past, present continuous or future tense. (15 points)

Dear Ömer,

I _____ (write) to you from England. I _____ (be) here for a seminar with Ünal and İsmail. We _____ (have) a great time here. We _____ (go) sightseeing everyday.

Yesterday, we _____ (go) shopping, but Ünal couldn't come with us because he _____ (not / feel) well. We _____ (buy) some interesting presents for you. The shops in the town _____ (be) great.

Tomorrow, we _____ (have) drama classes and I hope Ünal _____ (be) fine and _____ (join) the course.

Anyway, at the moment, we _____ (sit) on the balcony and _____ (enjoy) the view. We _____ (leave) for Turkey next week.

See you soon.

Your friend.

8- This is a short biography of my friend Metin. Write a paragraph about Metin. (15 points)

Born: 1965
Born: Yozgat
Studied: 19 May University.
Went: The U.S.A. for master Degree in 1988.
Now: Teaches at university.

STUDENT'S PART	TEACHER'S PART
NAME:	DATE:
NUMBER:	MARK:
CLASS:	COMMENT:

PROGRESS TEST 6

1- Match the sentences in List A with the sentences in List B. (10 points)

LIST A

- a) What was the name of the girl
- b) Can you remember
- c) There were two cars
- d) Can you tell me the way
- e) Was there an accident

LIST B

- 1) the name of the shop?
- 2) in front of the house.
- 3) on the road?
- 4) to the state building?
- 5) you were walking with?

a	b	c	d	e

2- Find the mistakes and rewrite the sentences. (10 points)

- a) We were watched TV at five o'clock.
_____.
- b) Why did you went to the supermarket?
_____.
- c) Were Joseph cleaning the windows?
_____.
- d) When was the last time you visit a museum?
_____.
- e) Where did you going this morning?
_____.

3- Complete the following sentences in the past continuous or simple past tense. (10 points)

- a) As I _____ (go) home, I _____ (meet) her.
- b) While we _____ (work), they _____ (go) to bed.
- c) When it _____ (start) raining, the boy _____ (enter) a shop.
- d) Just as they _____ (cross) the street, they _____ (notice) the bus.
- e) As they _____ (watch) TV, the power _____ (go) off.

4- Complete the following story with correct form of the verbs in brackets. Use the simple past or past continuous tense. (10 points)

Yesterday, two young people walked (walk) into a bank in Istanbul. They _____ (wear) jeans and leather coats and they _____ (carry) bags. While the bank officers _____ (work), the men _____ (point) guns to them. One of the men _____ (hit) the security guard on the head. The man at the desk _____ (open) the cash drawer and _____ (give) the robbers 70 billion TL. The robbers _____ (leave) quickly. While they _____ (run) towards the car, the security guard regained consciousness. He _____ (shoot) them. They were both killed.

5- Answer the following questions according to the passage in “question 4”. (10 points)

- a) What were the robbers wearing?
_____.
- b) What did one of them do?
_____.
- c) Who opened the cash drawer and gave them the money?
_____.
- d) What happened while they were running towards their car?
_____.
- e) What happened to them in the end?
_____.

6- Give true answers to the following questions. (10 points)

- a) What is your favourite football team?
_____.
- b) What colour do you like most?
_____.
- c) Who is your favourite pop-singer?
_____.
- d) What is your favourite food?
_____.
- e) What is your favourite drink?
_____.

7- Complete the following sentences with “may, can, can’t”. (10 points)

- a) _____ I go out?
- b) _____ you clean the board, please?
- c) I _____ speak German, but I want to.
- d) Where _____ you catch a plane?
- e) Perhaps, they _____ send you a letter.

8- Circle the odd word out. (10 points)

- a) Sailing – Cleaning – Boxing - Running.
- b) Big – Small – Happy – Often.
- c) Town – Village – City – School.
- d) English – Science – Geography – Story.
- e) River – Mount – Lake – Sea.

9- Put the words in the right order. Make questions and answer them. (points 20)

- a) Can / excuse / you / me / help / ? /
_____.
_____.
- b) What / envelope / mean / in / English / does / ? /
_____.
_____.
- c) What / date / today / the / is / ? /
_____.
_____.
- d) Get up / this / what / you / time / did / morning / ? /
_____.
_____.
- e) Who / with / sitting / you / are / ? /
_____.
_____.

STUDENT'S PART

NAME:

NUMBER:

CLASS:

TEACHER'S PART

DATE:

MARK:

COMMENT:

PROGRESS TEST 7

1- Choose the correct alternative. (10 Points)

- 1) The film was *disappointing* / *disappointed*.
- 2) The match was quite *excited* / *exciting*.
- 3) I wasn't *excited* / *exciting* at the match.
- 4) Children were *boring* / *bored* in the park
- 5) The questions were not *surprising* / *surprised*.

2- Put the following adjectives into correct order. (10 points)

- a) a-an / nice / wooden / square / table /.
_____.
- b) a-an / green / new / wool / pullover /.
_____.
- c) a-an / big / plastic / black / bag /.
_____.
- d) a-an / interesting / long / holiday /.
_____.
- e) a-an / ring / golden / unusual /.
_____.

3- Complete the sentences with following adverbs. (10 points)

well fast hard dangerously happily

- a) I am tired, because I worked _____.
- b) The children walk very _____.
- c) She can speak English _____.
- d) My friend drives car _____.
- e) They live in the small house _____.

4- Complete the sentences with correct superlative. (10 points)

- a) Dolphins _____
(friendly) animals
- b) Fatih Terim _____
(good) coach in Turkey.
- c) Istanbul University _____
(old) university.
- d) Rize _____
(wet) city in Turkey.
- e) Morning _____
(busy) time of the day.

5- Complete the sentences with the comparative form of the adjectives. (10 points)

- a) A motorcycle _____
(expensive) than a scooter.
- b) Blue Mosque _____
(old) than Dolmabahçe Palace.
- c) A horse can run _____
(fast) than a donkey.
- d) Super-girl _____
(slow) than Superman.
- e) Ali's marks _____
(good) than my marks.

**6- Answer the following questions
(10 points)**

- a) Which subject do you like best?
_____.
- b) Who has got more pens than you?
_____.
- c) Who gets up the earliest in your family?
_____.
- d) Which city is the most crowded?
Istanbul, Hakkari or Adana?
_____.
- e) Who is the tallest student in your class?
_____.

**7- Use “so” or “such” in the blanks.
(10 points)**

- a) I was _____ tired that I couldn't run.
- b) It was _____ an exciting game!
- c) She was _____ old that she couldn't walk.
- d) They walked _____ fast that the boy couldn't catch them.
- e) It was _____ a dirty pool that nobody wanted to swim.

8- Make sentences using “as –as” or “not as – as” (10 points)

- a) BMW / Opel / fast /
_____.
- b) Mount Erciyes / Mount Ağrı / high /.
_____.
- c) Gold / silver / expensive /.
_____.
- d) Boxing / karate / dangerous /.
_____.
- e) Cigarette / alcohol / harmful /.
_____.

**9- Make sentences “the more-the more”.
(10 points)**

- a) Less / work / less / earn /.
_____.
- b) Much / take exercise / healthy / be /
_____.
- c) Late / go to bed / late / get up /.
_____.
- d) Much / practice / much / be perfect /.
_____.
- e) Fast / drive / much / be in danger /.
_____.

**10- Write the opposite of following
adjectives. (10 points)**

- a) Quick _____.
- b) Happy _____.
- c) Beautiful _____.
- d) Lucky _____.
- e) Dangerous _____.
- f) Small _____.
- g) Hardworking _____.
- h) Cold _____.
- i) Exciting _____.
- j) Thick _____.

STUDENT'S PART

NAME:

NUMBER:

CLASS:

TEACHER'S PART

DATE:

MARK:

COMMENT:

PROGRESS TEST 8

1- Complete the following sentences with "since" or "for". (10 points)

- a) I have stayed in that city _____ a long time.
- b) They have been mending the car _____ the accident.
- c) She has been cleaning the house _____ the morning.
- d) The footballers have practised _____ two hours.
- e) I haven't been to doctor _____ 1997.

2- Use the suitable possessive pronoun and rewrite the sentences. (10 points)

- a) The man is cleaning *his car*.
_____.
- b) The blue ones are *my books*.
_____.
- c) Which one is *your school*?
_____.
- d) Where can they park *their car*?
_____.
- e) You have got *her book* in your bag.
_____.

3- Complete the sentences with "must, mustn't, have to / has to / don't have to". (10 points)

- a) He _____ brush his teeth everyday.
- b) You _____ feed the animals. Look at the sign!
- c) The park is free. I _____ pay money.
- d) She _____ give her milk everyday.
- e) You _____ talk loudly in the library.

4- Put "a/an" or "the" where necessary. (10 points)

- a) They went to _____ Alps to ski.
- b) _____ River Nile is _____ longest river.
- c) In _____ future, people will leave on _____ moon.
- d) There is _____ man in _____ garden.
- e) We have _____ cinema in the town.
- f) My son eats _____ egg every morning.
- g) The fourth month of _____ year is April.

5- Complete the sentences with "been / gone" (10 points)

- a) Have you ever _____ to China?
- b) My cousin isn't at home. She has _____ shopping.
- c) They have _____ to Cyprus. They will come back soon.
- d) I've never _____ to an opera.
- e) Hello! Where have you _____?

6- Complete the sentences with question tags. (10 points)

- a) We have been here since the morning, _____?
- b) They can't solve the problem, _____?
- c) You like playing tennis, _____?
- d) The drivers must be careful, _____?
- e) The film finished very late, _____?
- f) Your mother is waiting for you, _____?
- g) He was catching fish, _____?
- h) They didn't invite you to their party, _____?
- i) My girlfriend has got a sports car, _____?

7- Complete the following sentences using "just, already, yet". (10 points)

- a) No, thank you. I have _____ drunk tea.
- b) We haven't finished the book _____.
- c) Has your father returned from work _____?
- d) We have _____ bought some bread. It is very fresh.
- e) Ali: Are you coming to the shops, Can?
Can: No, I've _____ been there.

8- Complete the sentences with "need, needn't, needn't have". (10 points)

- a) I bought some fruit. You _____ buy more.
- b) It's raining. You _____ to take your umbrella.
- c) They _____ help me. I finished my work.
- d) We _____ bought cake, but I bought.
- e) You _____ hurry. We have a lot of time

9- Answer the following questions. (8 points)

- a) How long have your parents been married?
_____.
- b) What is the most exciting match you've ever watched?
_____.
- c) Who is the nicest person you've ever met?
_____.
- d) How long have you known your classmate?
_____.

10- Match the jobs in List A with the words in List B. (12 points)

LIST A

- a) Teacher
- b) Driver
- c) Nurse
- d) Engineer
- e) Secretary
- f) Worker

LIST B

- 1) Bus
- 2) Buildings
- 3) School
- 4) Office
- 5) Hospital
- 6) Factory

a	b	c	d	e	f

STUDENT'S PART

NAME:

NUMBER:

CLASS:

TEACHER'S PART

DATE:

MARK:

COMMENT:

PROGRESS TEST 9

1- Rewrite the following sentences using "neither – nor". (10 points)

a) The driver didn't drive carefully. He didn't drive slowly, either.

b) The film wasn't exciting. It wasn't funny, either

c) Students won't go on holiday. Teacher won't go on holiday, either.

d) The car wasn't cheap. It wasn't new, either.

e) I can't dance. I can't sing, either.

2- Rewrite the sentences with "both / and". (10 points)

a) I visited my uncle. I visited my aunt, too

b) She was tall. She was beautiful, too.

c) I bought a pen. I bought a pencil, too.

d) The pilot checked the buttons. He checked the engines, too.

3- Complete the following sentences. (10 points)

a) I didn't get up early, because

_____.

b) She was out of money, so

_____.

c) The water was very dirty, so

_____.

d) The match didn't start, because

_____.

e) We were late because of

_____.

4- Complete the following sentences with indefinite pronouns. (10 points)

a) Was there _____ famous there?

b) I haven't bought _____ yesterday.

c) You can buy _____ you want.

d) I left my friend _____ here.

e) _____ was very expensive here.

5- Complete the sentences with "too" or "enough". (10 points)

a) The film is _____ boring. I don't want to watch it.

b) They have got _____ money to buy that dress.

c) The questions are _____ difficult to answer.

d) The dog is fast _____ to catch the cat

e) The water is _____ cold to swim.

6- Complete the sentences with suitable reflexive pronouns. (10 points)

- a) I think I can't finish this work
_____.
- b) Most young people go on holiday
_____.
- c) She is too young. She can't go there
_____.
- d) Suddenly, the door was closed
_____.
- e) We will solve these problems
_____.

7- Complete the sentences with suitable type of "if clauses". (10 points)

- a) If you want to learn a language, you
_____ (study) hard.
- b) Tell him to call me, if you
_____ (see) her.
- c) If they finish the work, they
_____ (start) another one.
- d) If I had more time, I _____
(complete) the exercises.
- e) If their car hadn't broken down, they
_____ (arrive) in time.

8-Use "either", "or" and rewrite the sentences. (10 points)

- a) They can stay in our house or in a hotel.
_____.
- b) She reads magazines or newspapers.
_____.
- c) I can ride a bike or a horse.
_____.
- d) I like drinking coke or tea.
_____.
- e) The film will start at 10 or 11.
_____.

9- Combine the following sentences using "who, which, whose, where, when". (10 points)

- a) The girl is a top model. She is standing on the stage.

_____.
- b) A lighter is a device. It is used for lighting cigarettes.

_____.
- c) The old lady is our neighbour. Her husband died last year.

_____.
- d) A cafe is a place. We can drink tea.

_____.
- e) 2000 was the year. 21st century started then.

_____.

10- Complete the sentences in future perfect tense. (10 points)

- a) By tomorrow, _____.
- b) By June, _____.
- c) Before the match, _____.
- d) Until the morning, _____.
- e) By the end of this month, _____.

STUDENT'S PART

NAME:

NUMBER:

CLASS:

TEACHER'S PART

DATE:

MARK:

COMMENT:

PROGRESS TEST 10

1- Report the following sentences. (30 points)

a) Teacher: "Don't make noise."

.....

b) Cenk says: "I can play tennis well."

.....

c) Mr Yılmaz said. "They are waiting in the park."

.....

d) The minister said: "Schools will be opened next month."

.....

e) Ömer to me: "Did you finish the questions?"

.....

f) Bora to Burcu: "Are you coming to the cinema tomorrow?"

.....

g) The interviewer to the girl: "How long have you stayed abroad?"

.....

h) "Could you give me a hand?" The old woman to the boy.

.....

i) Father to son: "Your uncle is going to meet you at the airport."

.....

j) The film director is saying: "Please, be a little more active."

.....

2- Rewrite the following sentences in causative. (20 points)

a) My friend painted our office yesterday.
We

b) I asked the man to mend the iron.

I

c) My computer is out of order. I'll take it to the mechanic. (mechanic)

I

d) Her purse was lost. She will ask the police to find it. (the police)

She

e) The windows are dirty. I will ask the cleaners to clean them. (the cleaners)

I

3- Rewrite the following sentences in passive voice. (20 points)

- a) They paint the house every year.
_____.
- b) America sent the warships to the gulf.
_____.
- c) We are tidying the room.
_____.
- d) Were you watering the flowers?
_____?
- e) Have the police caught anybody?
_____?
- f) They hadn't visited the Atatürk Museum before.
_____.
- g) The government will take new measurements.
_____.
- h) Are the students going to give a party?
_____?
- i) Can your father mend this bike?
_____?
- j) Who must control the tickets?
_____?

4- Complete the following sentences in past perfect or simple past tense. (20 points)

- a) Before they left the room, _____.
- b) The footballers had a bath after _____.
- c) I had just cleaned my table when _____.
- d) By the time the bell rang, _____.
- e) After she had waited two days, _____.

5- Put the verbs in brackets into the correct order. (10 points)

- a) If I _____ (be) you,
I wouldn't go there.
- b) If they had been more careful, they
_____ (not have) an accident.
- c) If my son _____ (save) some money,
he will buy a scooter.
- d) Before they arrived, we _____ (tidy)
all the rooms.
- e) After it had got dark, the children
_____ (go) out.
- f) While you _____ (sleep), I
prepared the breakfast.
- g) We _____ (not practise) the
song since last week.
- h) _____ the footballers _____
(play) match everyday?
- i) I had my hair _____ (dye) last week.
- j) _____ they _____ (leave) for
their country tomorrow?

STUDENT'S PART

NAME:

NUMBER:

CLASS:

TEACHER'S PART

DATE:

MARK:

COMMENT:

PROGRESS TEST 11**1- Write the correct forms of the adjectives and adverbs. (10 points)**

- a) She is..... (beautiful) girl I've ever met.
b) This is not as.....(expensive) the other one.
c) Bananas are.....(not cheap) oranges.
d) I think Turkish food(good) Italian.
e) Mardin is..... (far) distance I've ever travelled.

2- Complete the following table. (10 points)

adjective	comparative	Superlative
		the best
	more handsome	
little		
	easier	
		the most expensive

3- Complete the following sentences. (10 points)

- a) Yesterday was one of the day of my life.
b) This classroom is..... the other classroom.

- c) This is..... TV programme I've ever watched.
d) The film was..... than I expected.
e) Istanbul is (crowded) city in Turkey.

4- Rewrite the following sentences. (20 points)

- a) I haven't read as much as you.
You've read.....
.....
b) Our team isn't as good as your team.
Your team
.....
c) Nobody in the family is taller than Murat.
Murat.....
.....
d) No student in this class is noisier than Ercan.
Ercan is the
.....
e) Bora is the youngest in the family.
Everyone in the family
.....

**5- Underline the correct word.
(10 points)**

- a) This mosque is *the oldest / eldest* in Turkey.
- b) Actually, he is *more bad / worse* than he was yesterday.
- c) The exam wasn't *as hard as / as hard* I expected.
- d) Jane plays tennis *gooder / better* than Monica.
- e) This game is *least interesting / less interesting* than tennis.

**6- Answer the following questions.
(10 points)**

- a) Who is the funniest student in your class?
.....
- b) Whose pronunciation is better than yours?
.....
- c) Which is more suitable for your family? A house or a flat?
.....
- d) Where do you like living most? In a village or in a city?
.....
- e) Which season do you like most? summer or winter?
.....

**7- Rewrite the following sentences.
(20 points)**

- a) The water isn't hot enough. (cold)
It is too cold
- b) You are too late to enter the concert hall. (early)
.....
.....
- c) I don't find golf interesting. (keen on)
.....
.....
- d) I can't buy that car. It is very expensive. (rich)
.....
.....
- e) I can't go to bed now. It's too early. (late)
.....
.....

8- Find three things or people in your class. (10 points)

- a)
.....are the most boring
- b) Graduated from the same primary school.....
.....
- c) Love dancing most.....
.....
- d) Are the tallest.....
.....
- e) Most hardworking.....
.....

STUDENT'S PART	TEACHER'S PART
NAME:	DATE:
NUMBER:	MARK:
CLASS:	COMMENT:

PROGRESS TEST 12

1- Complete the sentences with the correct forms of the verbs in brackets (be going to or future will) (10 points)

- We (have)a baby next week.
- I'm tired. So I (go)to bed early.
- Bye for now. Perhaps I (see)you tomorrow morning.
- Next weekend I (stay)with my friends.
- I'm sure you (like)your new school.

2- Complete the sentences with the correct form of the verbs in brackets. (simple past or past continuous.) (20 points)

- While we (run)my wife (fall over).....
- They (eat)kebab everyday in Adana.
- When I (enter)the classroom they (fight).....
- While they (listen)to the news, they(hear)the bad news.
- As the people(sunbathe)on the beach. It (start)to rain.

3- Read the answers and write question for each answer. (20 points)

-?
Yes, that's right. I lost my wallet yesterday.
-?
No, they weren't. They were decorating their new house.
-?
Not Italy. We went toCyprus on holiday.
-?
Very hot? Yes, it was.
-?
Because I was ill.

4- Complete the sentences with the correct forms of the verbs in brackets (Present Simple or Present Continuous) (10 points)

- Where (you, go)? This is the wrong way.
- Please be quiet! We (watch)a romantic film.
- Jane (always, get up)at 7 in the morning.
- I (watch)a lot of TV every night.
- I'd like to buy that suit. How much (it, cost)?

**5- Choose the best answer.
(10 points)**

- 1- When he spoke to him, he
.....the book yet.
a- hadn't finished b- had finished
c- will finish d- finished
- 2- Theyto have a look all
the shop window, before they
.....their decision.
a- want/making b- want/made
c- want/make d- wanted/made
- 3- They missed the beginning of the
film. Itbefore they
.....
a- starts/arrived b- started/arrived
c- had started/arrived
d- starting/arrived
- 4- He couldn't find his wallet because
his sister
a- had hidden b- was hidden
c- is hiding d- will hide
- 5- When I was a child Ihours
playing football in the garden.
a- used spend b- use to spend
c- have spend d- used to spend

**6- Choose the best answer.
(10 points)**

- a) I have had/had several exams since
last week.
b) The ministers have been
discussing/discussed the problem for
two weeks.
c) He has already finished/been
finished his homework.
d) When she arrived home, the film
had already started/ has started.
e) It was still raining when we stopped
/ have stopped for dinner.

**7-Ask questions for underlined
words. (20 points)**

- a) She made a silly mistake and
everybody laughed.
What.....
.....
What.....
.....
- b) You must drive carefully , because
the road is icy.
How.....
.....
Why.....
.....
- c) They are practising English with the
tourists.
What.....
.....
Who.....
.....
- d) We stayed in a five star hotel for
two weeks.
Where.....
.....
How long.....
.....
- e) She reads two newspapers every
morning.
What.....
.....
When.....
.....

STUDENT'S PART

NAME:

NUMBER:

CLASS:

TEACHER'S PART

DATE:

MARK:

COMMENT:

PROGRESS TEST 13

1- Match the following sentences. (10 points)

- 1- If a burglar broke into my house.
- 2- If I miss the school bus.
- 3- If she took more exercise.
- 4- If I were you.
- 5- If he trained harder.
- 6- If the music weren't too loud.

- a- she would feel better.
b- he would win more races.
c- I would scream.
d- I will take a taxi.
e- They wouldn't call the police.
f- I wouldn't help him.

1	2	3	4	5	6
c					

2- Complete each sentence using "if or unless" (10 points)

- a) Come on. Unless you hurry, you will miss the train.
b)you feel like going out, phone me tonight.
c) I run everyday I don't feel healthy.
d) We will have a garden partyit is too cold.
e) Ayla will go outshe finishes the housework.

- f) There will be a lot of pollution people use bikes instead of cars.

3- Underline the correct word in each sentence. (10 points)

- a) It they *telephoned* / had telephoned me, I *will give* / would have given the news.
b) If he *drove* / *had driven* more carefully, he *wouldn't have crashed* / *didn't crash*.
c) If we *run* / *ran*, we *can* / *will be* catch the bus.
d) If we *have* / *had* a helicopter, we *could* / *could be* go there earlier.
e) If you *lend* / *would lend* me your motorbike, I *will let* / *let* you borrow my rollerblades.
f) If she *had worn* / *wore* a raincoat, she *wouldn't have got wet* / *wouldn't got wet*.

4- Complete the following sentences. (10 points)

- a) If I were famous
.....
b) If all the icebergs melted
.....
c) If they hadn't gone out
.....
d) If she had brought some more money with her
.....

e) If you arrive early
.....
.....

**5- Answer the following questions.
(20 points)**

a) What changes would you do if you were the headmaster in your school?
.....
.....

b) What would you do if you were invisible?
.....
.....

c) Which country would you choose to live if you had a chance?
.....
.....

d) How would you feel if the school lasted 3 months and holidays 9 months.
.....
.....

e) What would you do if you knew your friend would die in a month.
.....
.....

**6- Make questions and answer them.
(20 points)**

a) what/do/lose your money?
-What would you do if you lost your money?

-I would telephone my parents.

b) who/invite/give a birthday party
.....
.....

c) where/visit/be in London.
.....
.....
d) how much/spend/want to buy new clothes.
.....
.....

e) what changes/make/be the Minister of Education
.....
.....

7- Find the objects. (10 points)

a) If you read it a lot. You are intellectual.
.....

b) If you don't have it you can't travel abroad
.....

c) If you don't do it, your teacher will get angry with you
.....

d) If you don't have it, you can't drive car
.....

e) If you eat it a lot, you will get fat.
.....

8- Give advice to your friends. Use "if I were you" (10 points)

a) I have got a lot of homework
.....
.....

b) I want to go to the party at night.
.....
.....

c) I don't have a girl friend. I can't talk to the girls.
.....
.....

d) I can't hear the teacher at the back seat
.....
.....

e) My parents treat me like a child.
.....
.....

f) I think I spend too much on CD's.
.....
.....

STUDENT'S PART	TEACHER'S PART
NAME:	DATE:
NUMBER:	MARK:
CLASS:	COMMENT:

PROGRESS TEST 14

1- Underline the correct word in each sentence active or passive. (10 points)

- Yesterday three cars were stolen/are stolen in Taksim
- We have been decided/have decided to go on a picnic on Sunday.
- The bus broke down/was broken down yesterday.
- Titanic was seen/saw by many people in the world.
- Web sites designed/are designed by the computer programmers.
- Most of the exams organized/are organised by OSYM in Turkey?

2- Correct the following sentences as in the example. (10 points)

- Toyota cars are made in Bursa(Sakarya)
No,. They're made in Sakarya.
- Coffee is picked in Nigeria. (Columbia)
.....
- Helmets are used by drivers. (Cyclists)
.....
- Oranges are produced in Malatya. (Antalya)
.....

- Shoes are made of wool. (Leather)
.....
- Most electronic equipments are manufactured in India. (Japan)
.....

3- Change the following questions into passive and then answer them in passive as in the example (20 points)

- When did the secretary type the letters?
When were the letters typed?
They were typed in the morning.
- Where have you bought this jacket?
.....
- Who arrested the workers after the demonstration?
.....
- Where were they building a new Olympic swimming pool?
.....
- When will the mechanic repair the televisions?
.....
- Why must they delay the flight to Rome?
.....

4- Put in a passive verb in the correct tense. (10 points)

- a) This model has been produced (produce) since last May.
b) The new book by the famous author (base) on facts.
c) The problem of unemployment (discuss) at the summit next week.
d) Mostar bridge (rebuild) after the war.
e) The postman..... (deliver) the exam results at the moment.
f) The vegetables should..... (keep) in the refrigerator.

5- Change the following into the passive. (10 points)

- a) Are we going to paint it or not?
Is it going to be painted or not?
b) Who should we invite to the party?
.....
c) An obsessed fan shot John Lennon in front of his house.
.....
d) The government should. take some precautions about the accidents.
.....
e) Nobody can measure happiness.
.....
f) They don't grow tobacco in Samsun any more.
.....

6- Change the following sentences into the active. (10 points)

- a) The USA president was met by the Prime Minister at the airport.
The Prime Minister met the USA president at the airport.
b) This medicine can not be bought without a prescription.
.....
.....
c) All the preparations for the wedding are being made by the organisers.
.....
.....
d) The bride's wedding dress was designed by a famous designer.

-
.....
e) I am going to be given a lift by my friend.
.....
.....

- f) My father has been checked by the doctor for two hours.
.....
.....

7- Choose the best answer (10 pts)

- a) All the drugs should be..... out of reach of children.
a) kept b) made c) keep d) store
b) The city was by a volcano.
a) painted b) cleaned
c) built d) destroyed
c) My carat the moment.
a) is being fixed b) was fixed
c) was being fixed d) fixed
d) Vegetables and fruits must..... before eating.
a) wash b) be washed
c)be washing d) washed
e) The school can not before 5 o'clock.
a) leave b) be leave
c) be left d) be leaved
f) The house was..... when I left in the morning.
a) being cleaned b) cleaning
c) being clean d) being cleaning

8- Answer the following questions. (20 points)

- a) When was the Turkish Republic founded?
.....
b) When was your father born?
.....
c) What currency is used in your country?
.....
d) What kind of TV programmes are watched most?
.....
e) Who was İnce Memed written by?
.....

STUDENT'S PART

NAME:

NUMBER:

CLASS:

TEACHER'S PART

DATE:

MARK:

COMMENT:

PROGRESS TEST 15

1- Underline the correct word. (10 pts)

- a) A young boy *who/which* was carrying a bunch of flower, knocked at the door.
- b) The school *which/whose* was in the city centre is being painted.
- c) The man *who/whose* house I am staying is an old friend.
- d) The students *who/which* were late were waiting at the door.
- e) The couple *who/whose* house I bought moved to another city.

2- Underline the relative pronoun that can be left out. (10 pts)

- a) The house that we are staying at is my uncle's
- b) The people who were leaving were singing happily.
- c) The garden which was very large, was full of flowers.
- d) The doctor who I go is on holiday now.
- e) The car which she bought last month, broke down.

3- Rewrite the sentences without a relative clause. (10 pts)

- a) That's the motel which they stayed one night.

.....
.....

- b) Ihlara valley was the most interesting place that I saw.

.....
.....

- c) The museum which we visited was extremely beautiful.

.....
.....

- d) The books which Mary read couldn't explain the problem.

.....
.....

- e) The girl who I met at the party was very beautiful.

.....
.....

4- Combine the following sentences using the suitable relative clause.(20pts)

- a) A man met me at the bus station. He carried my bags.

.....
.....

- b) A boy found a woman's passport. She gave him a reward.

.....
.....

c) The man was very angry. His car was damaged.
.....
.....

d) The girl is my friend. She lives next door.
.....
.....

e) The policeman stopped me. He asked my driving licence.
.....
.....

5- Circle the correct answer. (10 pts)

a) I'm writing to Zeynep,I met in Aksaray last month.

a- who b- whom c- whose d- which

b) The factoryI worked has closed down.

a- that b- where c- whose d- who

c) My brother lost his watchhe bought last month.

a- ____ b- whose c- who d- where

d) The ministerson was arrested yesterday has resigned.

a- where b- whose c- which d- ____

e) Our furniturewe've had for ten years still looks fine.

a- ____ b- who c- whose d- when

6- Complete the following sentences using adjective clauses. (10 pts)

a) I met a lot of new teachers this summer. The teachers are young and talented. The teachers

b) We go to the sport hall. The sport hall is in Sakarya. The sport hall.....

c) The Maths book is difficult. We used the maths book last term. The Maths book.....

d) Sometimes we go camping. The camping is always exciting and relaxing.

The camping.....

e) I watch documentaries on TV. The documentaries inform me a lot.

The documentaries.....

7- Complete the following sentences. (20 points)

a) A restaurant is a place.....

b) My house is the place.....

c) İstanbul is the city.....

d) Ünal is the man.....

e) Winter is the time.....

8- Write sentences with the given words. (10 pts)

a) Apartment / that / lived

b) village / that / grew up

c) country / that / love

d) Kayseri / where / live

e) Bodrum / where / spend holidays

STUDENT'S PART

NAME:

NUMBER:

CLASS:

TEACHER'S PART

DATE:

MARK:

COMMENT:

PROGRESS TEST 16

1- Underline the mistakes in the following sentences and rewrite them. (10 points)

a) Ali said me that he would leave early.
.....
.....

b) "What's the matter" George told.
.....
.....

c) Tom said he is coming to my birthday party.
.....
.....

d) Serdar told his friends that he has just bought a new bike.
.....
.....

e) He told he would be back soon.
.....
.....

2- Rewrite the following sentences in direct speech. (10 points)

a) Erol said that he was going shopping.
.....
.....

b) The manager said he would let me know the result.
.....
.....

c) Buğra said that he had finished his homework.
.....
.....

.....
.....
d) Nur said that she had written a letter to her uncle the previous day.
.....
.....

e) My uncle said they would see us the following day.
.....
.....

3- Rewrite the following sentences in direct speech. (10 points)

a) James asked Lisa if she was going with him or staying there.
.....
.....

b) Burak asked if I often used the internet.
.....
.....

c) The tourist asked me how many languages I could speak.
.....
.....

d) I asked my friend what time she had got up in the morning.
.....
.....

e) The teacher asked me who I wanted to sit next to in class.
.....
.....

4- Complete the following sentences in reported speech. (20 points)

- a) "I will certainly bring your car back at seven" I said my friend.
I promised.....
- b) "If I were you I wouldn't eat that much" Leyla said Mehmet.
Leyla advised.....
- c) "How about going for a picnic" said Ahmet.
Ahmet suggested
- d) Well done," you've passed the final exam" Tim said Mary.
Tim congratulated
- e) No, "I won't come with you" said Gürkan.
Gürkan refused

5- Change the following reported speech sentences into imperatives. (20 points)

- a) His teacher warned him not to be late.
.....
- b) I told him to respect other people.
.....
- c) Her mother advises her to come home on time.
.....
- d) The doctor reminded the patient to bring the prescription next time.
.....
- e) My wife asked me to visit her parents more often.
.....

6- Complete the following sentences. (20 points)

- a) Our teacher told us
.....
- b) I asked my best friend
.....
- c) The librarian told the students
.....
- d) The Prime Minister asked the people
- e) The director warned the footballers
.....

7- Write the following sentences in reported speech. (10 points)

- a) "I have some good news to tell you" Ünal said İsmail.
.....
- b) "My father has just gotten a new job" Halim said.
.....
- c) "We want to leave because we are exhausted" I said.
.....
- d) "The school is going to start next week" the principal said.
.....
- e) "I can help you with your homework" "My friend said to me"
.....

VOCABULARY 1

WORD RELATIONS

EXERCISES

A- Match the following nouns and make compound nouns as in the example.

a) hair	1) clock	1) <u>Hair dryer</u>
b) alarm	2) brush	2) _____
c) air	3) dryer	3) _____
d) city	4) centre	4) _____
e) pencil	5) case	5) _____
f) sauce	6) gallery	6) _____
g) book	7) park	7) _____
h) tooth	8) stop	8) _____
i) picture	9) port	9) _____
j) ice	10) agent	10) _____
k) foot	11) ball	11) _____
l) art	12) frame	12) _____
m) bus	13) pan	13) _____
n) news	14) case	14) _____
o) car	15) berg	15) _____

B- Complete the following sentences using suitable compound nouns from Exercise A.

- 1) He sets the _____ before going bed.
- 2) They met their friends at the _____.
- 3) The post office is in the _____. You can find easily.
- 4) The man parked his car at a _____.
- 5) Titanic hit an _____ and sank.
- 6) They always buy newspaper at the _____.
- 7) There a lot of pens in her _____.
- 8) Batuhan bought a _____ for his friend's birthday.
- 9) His favourite sport is _____.
- 10) The exhibition is at the _____. Did you visit it?
- 11) The plane landed at 4:00. I met them at the _____.
- 12) I always use _____ after the bath.
- 13) There are a lot of books in the _____.
- 14) The woman bought a _____ for her daughter.
- 15) The woman is cooking soup in a _____.

VOCABULARY 2

WORD RELATIONS

EXERCISES

A- Match the following nouns and make compound nouns as in the example.

a) tea	1) hole	1) <u>Tea Pot.</u>
b) pop	2) ball	2) _____
c) tooth	3) guard	3) _____
d) post	4) pot	4) _____
e) travel	5) studio	5) _____
f) girl	6) paper	6) _____
g) security	7) jockey	7) _____
h) rain	8) agency	8) _____
i) disc	9) star	9) _____
j) news	10) coat	10) _____
k) water	11) box	11) _____
l) basket	12) office	12) _____
m) film	13) friend	13) _____
n) post	14) paste	14) _____
o) key	15) fall	15) _____

B- Complete the following sentences using suitable words from Exercise A.

- 1) I boiled some water in the _____.
- 2) They bought a tube of _____ at the supermarket.
- 3) Shakira is a famous _____.
- 4) Ömer has got a lot of foreign _____. One of them is Ania.
- 5) The boy was looking through the _____.
- 6) Cem Ceminay is a talented _____.
- 7) There were a lot of _____ in front of the bank.
- 8) I received some holiday brochures from a _____.
- 9) Niagara is the most famous _____ in the world.
- 10) The most advanced _____ are in the Hollywood.
- 11) Hidayet Türkoğlu is a superb _____ player. He plays in NBA.
- 12) There were a lot of letters in the _____.
- 13) I read my horoscope in today's _____.
- 14) The man was wearing a _____. But it was sunny.
- 15) I went to the _____ to pay the telephone bill.

VOCABULARY 3

WORD RELATIONS

EXERCISES

A- Match the following verbs and nouns as in the example.

a) have	1) a message	1) <u>Receive an e-mail</u>
b) make	2) an e-mail	2) _____
c) send	3) a cake	3) _____
d) receive	4) a picture	4) _____
e) ride	5) a plane	5) _____
f) write	6) a song	6) _____
g) give	7) a diary	7) _____
h) draw	8) a car	8) _____
i) catch	9) a game	9) _____
j) ask	10) a shower	10) _____
k) play	11) a question	11) _____
l) fly	12) a cold	12) _____
m) sing	13) a party	13) _____
n) keep	14) a letter	14) _____
o) rent	15) a bicycle	15) _____

B- Complete the following sentences using suitable words from Exercise A.

- 1) I receive a lot of _____ every day.
- 2) My wife _____ every week. It is very delicious.
- 3) My friend _____ through the mobile phone.
- 4) Hüseyin wants to _____. He has got a mountain bike.
- 5) My wife _____ to his brother every month. He is in the army now.
- 6) Every year Sema _____ on her birthday.
- 7) Banu _____ in her notebook everyday.
- 8) People _____ every winter. They take drugs to recover.
- 9) Students always _____. They want to learn everything.
- 10) Children _____ in the garden in the afternoon. They like it.
- 11) A pilot _____.
- 12) Kağan always _____ in the room. He is very cheerful.
- 13) My students _____ in English. They write it every evening.
- 14) Some people _____ at the airport. They like driving.
- 15) People _____ everyday in summer. Because it's very hot in summer.

VOCABULARY 4

WORD RELATIONS

EXERCISES

A- Match the following verbs and nouns as in the example.

a) receive	1) a mistake	1) <u>Receive a message</u>
b) send	2) a bus	2) _____
c) ride	3) an example	3) _____
d) make	4) a headache	4) _____
e) give	5) a hat	5) _____
f) catch	6) a hamburger	6) _____
g) fly	7) a boat	7) _____
h) have	8) a holiday	8) _____
i) wear	9) a cigarette	9) _____
j) climb	10) a story	10) _____
k) eat	11) a mountain	11) _____
l) tell	12) a helicopter	12) _____
m) sail	13) a horse	13) _____
n) plan	14) an E-Mail	14) _____
o) light	15) a message	15) _____

B- Complete the following sentences using suitable words from Exercise A.

- 1) I _____ everyday from my friend.
- 2) Kaan is at the internet cafe now. He is _____ to his girl friend.
- 3) Ceyda is in the farm. She is _____ now.
- 4) The students are _____ for the new structure.
- 5) The man is running to the bus stop. He _____ everyday at the same time.
- 6) Burcu is a careless student. She always _____.
- 7) I'll taken an aspirin. I _____.
- 8) The pilot can _____.
- 9) The man is sitting on the bank and _____.
- 10) The young boys are _____ to the island.
- 11) The climbers are _____ in Switzerland.
- 12) Our teacher is _____ now. It is red.
- 13) The girls are _____ for summer.
- 14) Your friend is _____ at the school cafeteria.
- 15) Grandmother is _____ to the children.

VOCABULARY 5

OPPOSITE VERBS

EXERCISES

A- Match the following verbs with their opposites as in the example.

a) lose	1) subtract	1) <u>start</u>	X	<u>finish</u>
b) export	2) tighten	2) _____	X	_____
c) start	3) finish	3) _____	X	_____
d) close	4) miss	4) _____	X	_____
e) loosen	5) hate	5) _____	X	_____
f) refuse	6) set	6) _____	X	_____
g) punish	7) accept	7) _____	X	_____
h) rise	8) win	8) _____	X	_____
i) forget	9) reward	9) _____	X	_____
j) buy	10) open	10) _____	X	_____
k) cry	11) import	11) _____	X	_____
l) borrow	12) sell	12) _____	X	_____
m) love	13) laugh	13) _____	X	_____
n) catch	14) lend	14) _____	X	_____
o) add	15) remember	15) _____	X	_____

B- Complete the following sentences with one of the verbs from Exercise A.

- 1) Can I _____ your pen, please?.
- 2) If you arrive early, you can _____ the bus.
- 3) While the little girl was _____ bitterly, her brother was _____.
- 4) The boy _____ to do his homework and his teacher got angry with him.
- 5) I don't feel relaxed. I will _____ my belt.
- 6) The sun _____ in the east and _____ in the west.
- 7) The girl wants to _____ a new pair of shoes.
- 8) If you _____ 10 and 10, you get 20.
- 9) If you can't _____ the match, don't _____ it.
- 10) The manager didn't _____ my proposal. He _____ it.
- 11) His father _____ the boy for breaking the window.
- 12) If you need, I can _____ you my camera.
- 13) I _____ to close the doors of my car and someone stole my bag..
- 14) We _____ petrol from Saudi Arabia.
- 15) My son got good marks from the exams and I _____ him.

VOCABULARY 6

OPPOSITE ADJECTIVES

EXERCISES

A- Match the following adjectives with their opposites as in the example.

a) guilty	1) cold	1) <u>guilty</u>	X	<u>innocent</u>
b) beautiful	2) useful	2) _____	X	_____
c) clean	3) stingy	3) _____	X	_____
d) expensive	4) wide	4) _____	X	_____
e) strong	5) natural	5) _____	X	_____
f) hot	6) slow	6) _____	X	_____
g) harmful	7) sad	7) _____	X	_____
h) narrow	8) quiet	8) _____	X	_____
i) happy	9) ill	9) _____	X	_____
j) fast	10) present	10) _____	X	_____
k) absent	11) cheap	11) _____	X	_____
l) artificial	12) weak	12) _____	X	_____
m) noisy	13) innocent	13) _____	X	_____
n) healthy	14) ugly	14) _____	X	_____
o) generous	15) dirty	15) _____	X	_____

B- Complete the following sentences with one of the adjectives from Exercise A.

- I couldn't buy that car because it was too _____.
- The streets were _____ yesterday but they're _____ now. They cleaned all of them.
- Smoking is not _____ for our health. It's _____.
- My friend wasn't _____ in the class. He was _____.
- This cafe is too _____. Let's go to a _____ one.
- Mr. Sabancı was a _____ man. He helped the poor.
- The man wasn't _____. The judge found him _____ and released him.
- The weather was very _____ yesterday. We couldn't go out in day time.
- His mother isn't _____. She is in hospital now.
- The girl was very _____. The man asked her to marry him.
- My friend is very _____. He can lift a car.
- This car is too _____. I need a faster one.
- The street was very _____. We couldn't park the car.
- The lake in the middle of the park is not _____. It is artificial.
- We have to be _____ to finish the work.

VOCABULARY 7

ADJECTIVE PHRASES

EXERCISES

A- Match the following adjectives and nouns as in the example.

a) fast	1) hair	1) <u>colour TV</u>
b) green	2) wine	2) _____
c) colour	3) journey	3) _____
d) straight	4) environment	4) _____
e) fashionable	5) watch	5) _____
f) old	6) classroom	6) _____
g) digital	7) TV	7) _____
h) classical	8) restaurant	8) _____
i) crowded	9) room	9) _____
j) expensive	10) clothes	10) _____
k) single	11) car	11) _____
l) slow	12) dance	12) _____
m) heavy	13) metal	13) _____
n) long	14) sport	14) _____
o) dangerous	15) music	15) _____

B- Complete the following sentences using suitable adjective phrases from Exercise A.

- 1) There is _____ in every house.
- 2) Young people like _____, because they like speeding.
- 3) Teresa likes _____, especially Mozart.
- 4) My daughter has long _____.
- 5) Everybody in big cities wants a _____.
- 6) The couple offers their guests _____ at the parties.
- 7) Some young people listen to _____ music. They shake their heads.
- 8) In my opinion climbing, is a very _____.
- 9) I wanted to stay in _____, but they didn't have one.
- 10) Old people like _____.
- 11) I bought a _____ to my son for his birthday.
- 12) We liked the food but it was an _____.
- 13) It's a _____ from Istanbul to Kars.
- 14) We don't have any _____ in our school.
- 15) My friend always wears _____.

VOCABULARY 8

WORD RELATIONS WITH “HAVE”

HAVE	an agreement
	breakfast / lunch / dinner
	a bath / a shower
	a party
	fun
	a seat
	a quarrel
	a good / nice / bad time
	a row
	a chat
	a look
	a holiday
	a picnic
	a rest

The verbs **have (got)** is not used in “Continuous Tenses” when it means “possess”.

Example:

I am ~~having~~ a pet.

I have a pet.

EXERCISE

A- Complete the following sentences using one of the expressions above.

- 1) If the weather is fine, we will _____.
- 2) There were a lot of people in front of the bank. They _____.
- 3) We _____ at a restaurant once a week.
- 4) I always _____ after playing football.
- 5) Don't stand up. Please, _____.
- 6) The children _____ in the park. They enjoyed it a lot.
- 7) The two governments _____ on the pipeline.
- 8) I'm very tired. I need to _____ in a peaceful place.
- 9) The workers worked hard and they _____ now.
- 10) _____ at your exam papers before the time is over.
- 11) Tomorrow is my son's birthday. He is going to _____.
- 12) My friends visited me yesterday. We _____ about this and that.

VOCABULARY 9

WORD RELATIONS WITH “MAKE” AND “DO”

MAKE	a discovery a prediction an effort a cake / some food a mess a friend / friends a decision / choice a noise a phone call money a profit a bed (tidy a bed) a speech a visit / trip / journey a mistake / an error a line / a circle / a group an offer / arrangement rules / laws	DO	a favour homework your best a job harm maths / history (to study at school) well (to be successful) the housework someone good (to improve someone's health) your teeth (brush your teeth)
			BUT: How do you do. = Pleased to meet you. What do you do? = What is your job?

EXERCISE

A- Complete the following sentences using one of the expressions above.

- 1) My friend _____ last year. He bought an expensive car.
- 2) Don't _____. The baby is sleeping.
- 3) _____ me _____ and don't tell it to anybody.
- 4) Children in the boarding school _____ their _____ in the morning.
- 5) I _____ a lot of _____ in the exam and I got low mark.
- 6) One of my students is _____ science at university.
- 7) He _____ at the post office and bought some stamps.
- 8) We had some guests yesterday and my wife _____ a delicious _____.
- 9) All the housewives _____ in the morning.
- 10) The prime minister _____ about Turkish economy.
- 11) Please, _____ and win the exam.
- 12) The tourists _____ to Black Sea region.
- 13) Turkish and Greek governments _____ on Aegean problem.
- 14) My daughter _____ her room _____. Everything was on the floor.
- 15) They moved to Uşak last month, but they _____ a lot of _____.

VOCABULARY 10

WORD RELATIONS WITH “SAY” AND “TELL”

SAY	good morning / afternoon, etc.. something / nothing / about one's prayers so a few words something to yourself	TELL	the truth a lie a secret a story the time the difference somebody one's name somebody the way one from another one's fortune
-----	---	------	---

EXERCISE

A- Complete the following sentences using one of the expressions above.

- 1) Can you _____ between a city and a town?
- 2) Can you _____ me _____ to the post office?
- 3) The fortune teller was _____ the girl's _____ in the park.
- 4) She _____ about it.
- 5) My grandmother used to _____ us _____ every night.
- 6) He _____ and went to bed.
- 7) Can you _____ me _____, please? I am late for school.
- 8) Please, be honest and _____.
- 9) Don't tell anybody. I'll _____ you _____.
- 10) Everybody _____ to the God.
- 11) The police forced the murderer to _____ his partner's _____.
- 12) The man could _____ before he died.
- 13) You are very handsome. I know. Everybody _____.
- 14) Everybody _____ to one another when they meet in the morning.
- 15) There was nobody in the room. He was _____ himself.

INITIALS

AD- Anno Domini - used to mark time that comes after the commonly accepted beginning of the Christian era

The ancient city was founded in 125 AD.

AI- Artificial Intelligence - used for robots etc

Many people in Japan electronic industry have been researching AI for many years now.

AIDS- Acquired Immune Deficiency Syndrome - a disease of the immune system

Recently the number of AIDS patients has been increasing rapidly in some European countries.

AM- Amplitude Modulation - a type of radio frequency

Young people don't listen to AM radio much because they like the songs that FM radios play.

ASAP- As Soon As Possible

Please finish the report about the budget and give it to me ASAP.

BA- Bachelor of Arts - from a university

My friend has received a BA in education from his university.

B&B- Bed and Breakfast - a small inn or hotel that serves breakfast

After driving for 24 hours, we stopped at a small B&B to have a rest.

BSc- Bachelor of Science - from a university

My son will receive a BSc in medicine from his university.

BYOB- Bring Your Own Bottle - used for a party or dinner where each person must bring something to drink

John decided to have a dinner party at his house next Sunday and told that it was BYOB.

CEO- Chief Executive Officer

Sakıp Sabancı was the CEO of Sabancı Companies.

CIA- Central Intelligence Agency - US spy and security organization

The CIA was involved in the efforts to free the hostage soldiers in Afghanistan.

COD- Cash On Delivery - used when a delivery person receives cash when he delivers something

My friend decided to send away for some books and the company said that they would send them to her COD.

DIY- Do-It-Yourself

My wife went to a DIY store and bought the materials to build a bookcase but it was not easy for her to do it.

DJ- Disc Jockey

In my free time I always wanted to work as a disc jockey while I was at university.

DNA- Deoxyribonucleic Acid - main constituent of the chromosomes of all organisms

Many medicine companies spend a lot of money in the study of DNA.

ECG- Electrocardiogram - an electronic test of a person's heart

I was asked to take an ECG test by my doctor last week.

eg- Exempli Gratia - Latin for example

My friend has travelled many countries around the world- eg Australia, Netherland, England.

ESL- English as a Second Language

The ESL classes at my school have been organized by language department.

ETA- Estimated Time of Arrival

My ETA will be 10 am when I return home next week.

FBI- Federal Bureau of Investigation

The killer was found in a worldwide search by the FBI.

FM- Frequency Modulation - a type of radio signal

The radio station that we are fond of listening to is an FM station.

FYI- For Your Information

The manager wrote FYI on the information bulletin and sent it to the other staff.

GMT- Greenwich Mean Time - a place in England used as the standard for time around the world

The Olympic games will start at 11:00 AM tomorrow GMT.

GP- General Practitioner - a general doctor

I went to see a GP when I had blood pressure last week.

HIV- Human Immunodeficiency Virus

The rate of HIV infection among drug users is higher than we can imagine.

HQ- Headquarters

The HQ of the company is located in downtown in Istanbul.

IMF- International Monetary Fund - an international agency that works to stabilize currencies etc

The IMF imposed very strict currency guidelines to Turkey for many years and many people were opposed to.

IQ- Intelligence Quality - a measure of a person's intelligence

The IQ of my friend's son is very high.

LP- Long-Playing Record

My uncle has been collecting LPs of many singers and will give all of them to me.

LPG- Liquid Petroleum Gas

The truck carrying LPG was involved in an accident in Pendik last month and it was a real disaster.

MA- Master of Arts

My son has decided to study for his MA in education.

MIA- Missing In Action

According to most people in the United States there are still many MIA soldiers in Afghanistan and Iraq.

MC- Master of Ceremonies

My brother is always the MC for our relatives.

MD- Doctor of Medicine

My cousin received her MD when she was 22 years old and has been practicing medicine since then.

MP- Member of Parliament - used in the United Kingdom and Canada etc

There were several MPs at the meeting to protest the wars in the world.

MSc- Master of Science

The young man who has an MSc in computer science has been able to find a job easily.

NASA- National Aeronautics and Space Administration - the US space organization

According to a spokesperson for NASA the rocket won't be launched until next Sunday.

NATO- North Atlantic Treaty Organization

All members of NATO are gathering for an important meeting next month in İstanbul.

OAP- Old Age Pensioner

Some people in Turkey get OAP . They must be senior citizens.

PC- Personal Computer

Most of the teachers in my school have got PC and they make use of it a lot.

PE- Physical Education

When I was at school my favourite subject was PE but not in winter.

PhD- Doctor of Philosophy

If he can receive his PhD in economics he will get a job at the university.

PM- Post Meridiem - Latin for after noon

The school finishes at exactly 4:00 pm and we have a meeting everyday.

POW- Prisoner of War

The negotiations regarding POWs seem to continue for many years after the Iraq war.

PR- Public Relations

With good PR the politicians can easily gain the support of many people.

PS- Postscript - written at the end of a letter when you want to add some extra information

After finishing the main part of the letter the director wrote PS to include something very important.

PTA- Parent-Teacher Association

In our school we give special interest to PTA relations for the success of education.

RSVP- Répondez S'il Vous Plait - French for please reply

The invitation said RSVP so we quickly sent off a note to say that we would be able to attend conference.

SOS- Save Our Souls

international code signal of distress, call for help


Titanic had sent out many SOS signals but nobody was able to come to their rescue.

TA- Teaching Assistant

After finishing university I was able to get a job as a TA at a state school.

UFO- Unidentified Flying Object

The number of UFO sightings in Turkey has increased recently.



UV- Ultraviolet - a type of light ray

They used lots of sunscreen in order to protect the children from UV rays.

VCR- Video Cassette Recorder

The school bought a new VCR after the old one broke down.

VHF- Very High Frequency

The TV didn't work before the meeting because of a problem with the VHF connection.

VIP- Very Important Person

The football player was given the VIP treatment when he went to his hometown.

VP- Vice-President

After serving faithfully as vice-president for 10 years Mr Black was appointed to the position of company president.

VTR- Video Tape Recorder

The VTR in the classroom wasn't working so we borrowed our friends'.

INTERJECTIONS

Interjection is a big name for a little word. Interjections are short exclamations like **Oh!**, **Um** or **Ah!** They have no real grammatical value but we use them quite often, usually more in speaking than in writing. Here are some interjections with examples:

interjection	meaning	example
ah	expressing pleasure	"Ah, that feels good."
	expressing realization	"Ah, now I understand."
	expressing resignation	"Ah well, it can't be helped."
	expressing surprise	"Ah! I've done!"
alas	expressing grief or pity	"Alas, It's dead now."
dear	expressing pity	"Oh dear! Does it hurt?"
	expressing surprise	"Dear me! That's a surprise!"
eh	asking for repetition	"It's hot today." "Eh?" "I said it's hot today."
	expressing enquiry	"What do you think of that, eh?"
	expressing surprise	"Eh! Really?"
	inviting agreement	"Let's go, eh?"
er	expressing hesitation	"Lima is the capital of...er...Peru."
hello, hullo	expressing greeting	"Hello John. How are you ?"
	expressing surprise	"Hello! My bicycle's gone!"
hey	calling attention	"Hey! look at that!"
	expressing surprise, joy etc	"Hey! What a good news!"

hi	expressing greeting	"Hi! What's new?"
hmm	expressing hesitation, doubt or disagreement	"Hmm. I'm not so sure."
oh, o	expressing surprise	"Oh! You're here!"
	expressing pain	"Oh! I've got a headache."
	expressing pleading	"Oh, please say 'yes'!"
ouch	expressing pain	"Ouch! That hurts!"
uh	expressing hesitation	"Uh...I don't know the way to the city centre."
uh-huh	expressing agreement	"Shall we go?" "Uh-huh."
um, umm	expressing hesitation	"70 divided by 5 is...um...14."
well	expressing surprise	"Well I never!"
	introducing a remark	"Well, what did you say?"

AFFIXES

1) NEGATIVE PREFIXES

A) “mis-”.

We add the prefix “mis-” to the verbs of skill. It means “badly, wrongly, incorrectly”.

Examples:

misgovern, **mis**pronounce, **mis**understand, **mis**use.

Complete the following sentences:

I didn't mean that. You _____ me.

His pronunciation is not good. He sometimes _____ the words.

B) “un-”.

We add the prefix “un-” to the adjectives. It means “not”.

Examples:

unhappy, **un**usual, **un**kind, **un**breakable, **un**friendly, **un**natural.

Complete the following sentences:

The girl was very sorry. She was _____.

The door is very strong. It is _____.

We heard a different sound. It was _____.

We add the prefix “un-” to the adjectives ending in (-ed)

Examples:

Uncooked, **un**boiled, **un**polished, **un**salted.

Complete the following sentences:

The meal is _____. Please add some salt.

Don't eat any food _____. It is not healthy.

We add the prefix “un-” to the verbs. It means “opposite action”.

Examples:

Unbutton, **un**cover, **un**tie, **un**fasten, **un**lock.

Complete the following sentences:

When we arrived, the door was locked, but my wife _____ it.

He ties his dog at night but _____ it in the morning.

It was hot so I _____ my coat.

C) “in-”.

We add “in-” to the adjectives. It means “not”.

Examples:

informal, inactive, inorganic, insufficient, independent, incomplete.

Complete the following sentences:

Turkey is an _____ country.

We will have a meeting. It's not formal. It is _____.

The food is not sufficient. It is _____.

If the adjective starts with “l, m, p, r”, the prefix “in-” changes as follow.

Examples:

legal – illegal modest – immodest patient – impatient regular – irregular.

2) POSITIVE PREFIXES

A) “re-”

We add the prefix “re-” to the verbs. It means “for a second time”.

Examples:

reheat, retest, rewrite, reelect, redecorate, reorganize, replay.

Complete the sentences:

The handwriting is very bad. Please, _____ it.

The President was _____. He was president last year, too.

B) “pre-”

We add the prefix “pre-” to the nouns. It means “before”.

Examples:

prewar, preschool, prehistory.

Complete the sentences:

I advise the families to teach their children _____ activities.

This book tells _____ events.

We call the films which were made before the war “_____ films”.

C) “pre-”

We add “pre-” to the verbs. It means “before the usual time”.

Examples:

pretest, precheck, prefabricate, preselect.

Complete the following sentences:

The houses in the area are generally _____ houses.

The students were _____ before the main exam.

D) “pro-”

We add the prefix “pro-” to the nouns. It means “for”.

Examples:

Prowar, **pr**oreform, **pro**environment, **pro**armament .

Complete the following sentences:

He wants to make war. He is _____.

They protested the new factory. They are _____.

E) “anti-”

We add the prefix “anti” to the nouns. It means “against”.

Examples:

antiwar, **anti**reform, **anti**terrorist.

Complete the following sentences:

He doesn't want new reforms. He is _____.

He doesn't want any fights. He is _____.

F) “under-”

We add “under-” prefix to the verbs. it means “too little”.

Examples:

underdevelop, **under**use, **under**feed.

Complete the following sentences:

The housewives use the dish washer too little. They _____ it.

They don't give the dog enough food. They _____ it.

G) “over-”

We add “over-” prefix to the verbs. it means “too much”.

Examples:

overload, **over**use, **over**feed, **over**pay, **over**work.

Complete the following sentences:

Most drivers _____ their trucks.

In Turkey, most people _____ to earn enough money.

3) SUFFIXES

A) “-ic”, “-tic”

We use the suffix “-ic” or “-tic” to get adjectives from scientific nouns.

Examples:

economy - economic, history – historic, drama – dramatic, idiom – idiomatic.

Complete the following sentences:

There is a big _____ problem in most countries .

The story of the poor boy was very _____.

B) “-al”

We use the suffix “-al” to get adjectives from nouns.

Examples:

music – musical, mathematic – mathematical, logic – logical, critic – critical.

Complete the following sentences:

Everybody should play a _____ instrument.

There are a lot of _____ expressions in the newspaper.

C) “-en”

We use the suffix “en” to make verbs from adjectives. It means “make things happen”.

Examples:

tight – tighten, dark – darken, hard – harden, white – whiten.

Complete the following sentences:

There were black clouds. The sky _____.

The concrete became hard. It _____.

D) “-ify”

We use the suffix “-ify” to get verbs from nouns and adjectives.

Example:

class – classify, clear – clarify, simple – simplify, beautiful – beautify,

Complete the following sentences:

They painted the walls and cleaned the garden. They _____ it.

The text was very difficult and long, but the teacher _____ it.

E) “-ize”

We use the suffix “-ize” to get verbs from nouns and adjectives.

Examples:

atom – atomize, summary – summarize, pasteur – pasteurize, legal – legalize.


Complete the following sentences:

The teacher wanted the students to _____ the books.

The factories always _____ the milk.

PHRASAL VERBS

- 1) **Bring up** (look after and educate someone)
His uncle *brought him up*.
- 2) **Call off** (cancel something)
They *called off* all the flights.
- 3) **Fill in** (complete something, take someone's place,)
I *filled in* the application form.
The goalkeeper was injured. The substitute *filled in*.
- 4) **Find out** (learn about / discover)
The police *found out* the thief.
- 5) **Give away** (make a gift of, make something known)
The man who won the lottery *gave* all the money *away*.
I warned my friend not to *give* my secret *away*.
- 6) **Give up** (stop / stop trying)
My friend *gave up* smoking.
After trying hard, my brother finally *gave up*
- 7) **Knock out** (make unconscious)
The boxer *knocked out* his rival.
- 8) **Make up** (invent, become friends again)
Some children *make up* stories.
The players quarrelled. But I am sure they will *make up*.
- 9) **Pick up** (collect)
My friend will *pick me up* at 9:00.
- 10) **Put off** (postpone, discourage from)
They *put* the match *off* until next week.
The rain *put me off* going out.
- 11) **Show around** (give a guided tour)
Can you *show me around* the city?
- 12) **Break down** (stop working)
Our car *broke down* on the way to Ankara.
- 13) **Get away** (escape)
The thieves *got away* in a taxi.
- 14) **Look out** (beware)
Look out! There is a piece of stone on the road.

- 
- 15) **Take off** (leave the ground)
The plane *took off* in time.
- 16) **Turn up** (increase)
Turn the music *up*, please.
- 17) **Cut down** (reduce)
I decided to *cut down* on eating bread.
- 18) **Get along with** (have a good relation with)
I *get along with* my new director.
- 19) **Keep up with** (stay in the same place)
You are talking too much. I can't *keep up with* you.
- 20) **Call on** (visit)
Yesterday I *called on* my friend at his school.
- 21) **Come across** (find by chance)
I *came across* my old pictures in the drawer.
- 22) **Go over** (discuss the details)
The ministers are *going over* the strategy.
- 23) **Look forward to** (wait to pleasure and excitement)
I am *looking forward to* going on holiday.
- 24) **Come into** (inherit)
He *came into* a house.
- 25) **Deal with** (take action about)
Most cities *deal with* the pollution problem.
- 26) **Do without** (manage without)
The children will *do without* a holiday next year.
- 27) **Turn down** (decrease)
Turn the music *down*, please.
- 28) **Wear off** (fade away)
The perfume doesn't smell good. I hope, it will *wear off* in a short time.
- 29) **Hold up** (rob)
The robbers *held up* the bank.
- 30) **Fall out** (quarrel)
The couples have *fallen out* again.

JOKES

Find out about the cat

A chauffeur worked for a woman who took her cat with her on rides. During one trip, the driver dropped her at a mall before gassing up. The cat remained in the car, laying down on the top of the limousine's back seat. The service station's attendant often glanced at unusual passenger. Finally, he asked: "Sir, is that cat someone important?"

Writing to Grandma

A little boy wrote this letter to his grandmother:
Dear Grandmother,

I'm sorry I forgot your birthday last week. It would serve me right if you forgot mine next Tuesday. With love,
Mike

Writing letters to son

One student fell into a cycle of classes, studying, working and sleeping. Didn't realize how long he had neglected writing home until he received the following note:

"Dear Son, Your mother and I enjoyed your last letter. Of course, we were much younger then, and more impressionable.
Love, Dad

Screen Savers

I

Me: "I have put this Movie Magic screen-saver on for you."
Manager: "Wow, that's a nice picture."
Me: "Yeah, it's not bad, is it?"
Manager: "Can you set the screen-saver so the picture *doesn't* change?"
Me: "Huh?"
Manager: "You know, so the same picture stays there while we work?"
Me: "Oh! You want this as the wallpaper?"
Manager: (*angrily*) "No! I don't want you to start decorating the office!"

II

I sold my old computer to a friend's friend. He never called me again. Some months latter I saw him and ask him how it was going. He told me that he had thrown it away because it was broken. When I asked him what the problem was, he told me that when he stopped typing for a while, the image on the screen started to melt and slip to the bottom, leaving a black space. If he touched the mouse or the keyboard, everything returned to normal. He was convinced I sold him a defective machine and dumped the perfectly good computer. Apparently he hasn't ever heard of screen savers, and I forgot to tell him I had installed one named "Screen Melt FX."

IDIOMS

FOOD IDIOMS

apple of one's eye

- *someone or something that one likes a lot*

My children are the apples of my eye.

bread and butter

- *basic needs of life (food, shelter, clothing)*

In some places people work just for butter and bread.

coffee break

- *a break from work to rest and drink coffee*

The workers in that factory take a 20- minute coffee break everyday at 10:30

as cool as a cucumber

- *calm, not nervous or anxious*

The principal is always as cool as a cucumber and he never worries about anything.

duck soup

- *a task that doesn't require much effort*

It was duck soup for the young man to finish the work.

eat one's words

- *take back something one has said, admit something is not true*

The boy told the girl that he wouldn't call her again but later he ate his words and called the girl.

finger in the pie

- *participate in something that is happening*

Children always try to keep their fingers in the pie.

half-baked

- *not thought out or studied carefully*

The writer has a half baked idea about starting a new novel.

hot potato

- *a question or argument that is controversial and difficult to settle*

The issue of getting tax from the cars for the second time was a real hot potato.

in the soup

- *in serious trouble, in disorder*

Some students are in the soup now. They told they were at school but their parents saw them at the cinema.

make one's mouth water

- *look or smell very good, want to eat or drink very much*

Whenever I go to that restaurant and see the menu , it makes my mouth water.

piece of cake

- a task that is easily accomplished

It was a piece of cake. She had finished everything before the guests arrived.

sell like hotcakes

- sell quickly or rapidly

The new cassette of Tarkan has only been released for three days but it is selling like hotcakes.

spill the beans

- tell a secret to someone who is not supposed to know about it

Please don't spill the beans about his plans to start another job next month.

Head/Mouth Idioms

absent-minded

- forgetful

My father is very absent-minded and he always forgets his glasses at home.

at or on the tip of one's tongue

- at the point of being said, almost remembered

I can't remember the shop's name. It's on the tip of my tongue.

bad-mouth

- say bad things about someone

Some children were bad-mouthing their friends.

beat into one's head

- teach by telling again and again, drill

The teacher has been trying to beat English into the students' head.

beat one's head against a wall

- struggle uselessly against something, not succeed after trying very hard

The man was beating his head against the wall trying to change his friend's behaviour.

born with a silver spoon in one's mouth

- born to wealth and comfort, born rich

Bill Gates' son was born with a silver spoon in his mouth.

button one's lip

- stop talking, keep a secret, be quiet

When you attend a meeting, please button your lip.

by word of mouth

- Orally, from person to person by the spoken word

We learned that the governor would visit our school next Monday by word of mouth.



cross one's mind

- *be a sudden or passing thought, come to one's mind*

It suddenly crossed his mind that he had left the door open.

.....
.....
.....

go to one's head

- *make someone too proud, make a person think he or she is too important*

The new position has gone to his head and he thinks that he is a very important person.

.....
.....
.....

hair stands on end

- *the hair of one's head rises because of fright*

When my wife saw the accident her hair stood on end.

.....
.....
.....

head-hunting

- *search for qualified individuals to fill certain positions*

The school principal has been head hunting for weeks to find new teachers.

.....
.....
.....

hold one's tongue

- *be silent, not talk*

"Please hold your tongues", the teacher said to the students.

.....
.....
.....

keep one's mouth shut

- *be or stay silent*

I can't keep my mouth shut if someone does or says something wrong.

.....
.....
.....

make up one's mind

- *choose what to do, decide*

I have still not made up my mind whether to accept the offer or not.

.....
.....
.....

put our heads together

- *confer, discuss, talk*

We put our heads together with the family members to discuss the problem.

.....
.....
.....

put words into one's mouth

- *say without proof that another person has certain feelings or opinions*

His mother put words into his mouth when he told that he wanted to go on a week trip.

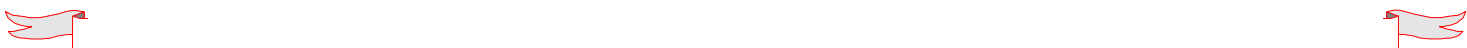
.....
.....
.....

slip of the tongue

- *the mistake of saying something one had not wanted or planned to say, an error of speech*

The minister made a slip of the tongue while he was talking to the journalists that he would resign.

.....
.....
.....



Heart idioms

at heart

- *in spite of, in reality*

Our teacher seems to be very angry at all time but at heart he's a very gentle person

break one's heart

- *make very sad or hopeless*

It broke my son's heart to learn that he failed the exam after he had studied so hard.

from the bottom of one's heart

- *with great feeling, sincerely*

After the earthquake Turkey thanked all the countries from the bottom of her heart for their help.

from the heart

- *sincerely, honestly*

The Prime Minister gave a speech from the heart after the elections.

heart is in the right place

- *kind-hearted, sympathetic or well-meaning*

Teachers love all the students because they know that their hearts are in the right place.

heart of stone

- *a nature without pity*

The mother who left her children in the street has a heart of stone.

heart stand still

- *be very frightened or worried*

My heart stood still when I saw my little son on the roof.

heart-to-heart

- *speaking freely and seriously about something private*

I had a heart-to-heart talk with my wife yesterday.

open one's heart

- *talk about one's feelings honestly, confide in someone*

When she met her old friend she opened her heart.

take heart

- *be encouraged, feel braver and want to try*

The government took heart in the fact that the inflation was decreasing.

with all one's heart

- *with great feeling, sincerely*

The boy tried with all his heart to persuade the girl to marry him.

heavy heart

- a feeling of being weighed down with sorrow, unhappiness

We left our friend's house with a heavy heart when we learned that he had a serious illness.

Medical Idioms

at death's door

- very near death

After the accident most of the passengers were at death's door.

back on one's feet

- physically healthy again

After having a serious operation his wife is back on her feet again.

breathe one's last

- to die

The man breathed his last before his children arrived.

bring around/round

- restore to health or consciousness, cure

Doctors managed to bring the small child around after the accident.

catch a cold

- get a cold

My daughter caught a bad cold and missed five days of school.

catch one's death of cold

- become very ill (with a cold, flu etc)

His wife caught her death of cold after walking in the rain for a long time.

check-up

- a periodic inspection of a patient by a doctor

Everybody should have annual check up.

feel on top of the world

- feel very healthy

I have been feeling on top of the world since I started running everyday.

go under the knife

- be operated on in surgery

Most people are afraid of going under the knife.

have a physical (examination)

- get a medical check-up

All the footballers had a physical before the league started.

on the mend

- healing, becoming better

The poor woman is on the mend after she broke her leg last month.

run a temperature

-have a higher than normal body temperature

My daughter ran a temperature and stayed in bed all day yesterday.

run down

- get into poor condition

Because of the bad working conditions most workers ran down.

run some tests

-a doctor does some medical tests on a patient

To find out the illness the doctors have run some tests on my mother.

splitting headache

- a severe headache

If I don't sleep well I always have a splitting headache the next day.

take someone's temperature

- measure someone's body temperature

When she took her child to the hospital the nurse took the child's temperature first.

Money Idioms

at all costs

- at any expense of time, effort or money

I plan to go on holiday at all costs.

back on one's feet

- return to good financial health

My brother is back on his feet after the economic crisis.

bring home the bacon

- earn the family living

I have been working hard for five years to bring home the bacon for my family.

bottom dollar

- one's last dollar

I spent my bottom dollar on my father's drugs..

bottom line

- line in a financial statement that shows net income or loss

The bottom line in the company's financial statement was better than expected.

bottom line

- final result, main point

The bottom line was that we had to move our house.

bet on the wrong horse

- base one's plans on a wrong guess about the results of something

He betted on the wrong horse supporting the other candidate for chairman.

break the bank

- win all the money at a casino gambling table

My friend broke the bank and bought an expensive car.

cash in on

- make money from an opportunity

Most pop stars cash in on their popularity and live a very wealthy life.

cheapskate

- a person who will not spend much money, a stingy person

The director is a cheapskate and won't even buy us a meal.

chicken feed

- a small amount of money

My daughter makes a lot of money saving chicken feed.

clean up

- make a lot of money, make a big profit

Two young men cleaned up at the horse races last week and bought what they wanted.

deadbeat

- person who never pays the money he owes

Some banks have been making an effort to solve the problem of deadbeat customers.

face value

- the worth or price printed on a stamp, bond, note or paper money etc.

The face value of the coin was very low but in reality it was worth a fortune.

fast buck

- money earned quickly and easily (and sometimes dishonestly)

Some people try to make a fast buck on the property but in fact they lose a lot.

feel like a million dollars/bucks

- feel wonderful

After the operation she felt like a million dollars.

flat broke

- having no money, penniless

Mrs Black was flat broke and didn't even have enough money to buy food.



for a song

- at a low price, cheaply

I sold my car for a song.

.....
.....
.....

go broke

- lose all one's money, have no money

Mr Green started a computer company two years ago but it quickly went broke.

.....
.....
.....

hand to mouth

- having only enough money for basic living

Although they have been living from hand to mouth they are very happy.

.....
.....
.....

highway robbery

- charge a high price for something

The amount of money that the travel agency charged was highway robbery.

.....
.....
.....

hit the jackpot

- make a lot of money suddenly

Mr Dobson hit the jackpot at the casino and went on a world tour.

.....
.....
.....

lose one's shirt

- lose all or most of one's money

The man lost his shirt at the casino and had no money to go home.

.....
.....
.....

make a living

- earn enough money to live

The family members work hard to make a good living.

.....
.....
.....

make ends meet

- have enough money to pay one's bills

After the economic crisis most people have been trying to make ends meet.

.....
.....
.....

money to burn

- very much money, more money than is needed

Some people can't make a living but some have money to burn.

.....
.....
.....

pay an arm and a leg for something

- pay a high price for something

The top model paid an arm and a leg for her jewellery.

.....
.....
.....

pay off

- pay and discharge from a job

The company paid off their employees and shut down for three months.

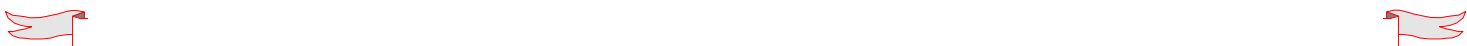
.....
.....
.....

pay-off

- bribe

The director received a pay-off and was forced to resign.

.....
.....
.....





red cent

- the smallest coin, a trivial sum of money

I wouldn't give a red cent for that coat.

.....
.....
.....

stone broke

- having no money, penniless

After the holiday most of the students were stone broke.

.....
.....
.....

(not worth) two cents

- almost nothing, something not important or very small

The equipment he needs to repair the door is not worth two cents.

.....
.....
.....

Negotiations Idioms

at stake

- something to be lost or gained

There was a lot at stake during the negotiations between the unions and the government

.....
.....
.....

beat around the bush

- talk about things without giving a clear answer

The President spent the meeting beating around the bush.

bone of contention

- the subject or reason for a fight

The cost of the bridge was a bone of contention during the talks between the company and the government.

.....
.....
.....

break down

- fail, stop

The negotiations between the two companies broke down last night.

.....
.....
.....

break off

- stop or end suddenly

The union broke off talks about the salary.

.....
.....
.....

break through

- be successful after overcoming a difficulty

After three week negotiations there was a breakthrough in the talks.

.....
.....
.....

bring off

- perform successfully

The teachers could bring off the exam questions and were ready to give the test.

.....
.....
.....

bring to terms

- make someone agree or do something

At first it seemed impossible for the two companies to agree on price but finally they brought to terms.



bring up

- *begin a discussion of or mention something*

The manager brought up the subject and everybody explained their ideas.

.....
.....
.....

call off

- *stop, quit, cancel*

The meeting was called off because of the bad weather conditions.

.....
.....
.....

come to terms

- *reach an agreement*

After discussing the problem for a week both sides came to terms for building a new system.

.....
.....
.....

come up

- *become a subject for discussions or decision*

Everything related to discipline problems at school came up during the meeting.

.....
.....
.....

come up with

- *produce or find a thought, idea or answer*

The director asked the people to come up with new ideas about the project.

.....
.....
.....

draw the line

- *set a limit to what will be done*

The company drew the line for the employees to use the computers.

.....
.....
.....

draw up

- *put in writing, write something in its correct form*

I drew up the contract with the landlord.

.....
.....
.....

drive a hard bargain

- *make an agreement to one's advantage, bargain hard*

My wife drew a hard bargain with the real estate agent for the house.

.....
.....
.....

fifty-fifty

- *equally, evenly*

When I go somewhere with my friends we share the expenses fifty-fifty.

.....
.....
.....

force one's hand

- *make someone do something or tell what one will do sooner than planned*

During the negotiations both sides forced their hands.

.....
.....
.....

get the message

- *understand clearly what is meant*

When I looked at one of my students who was trying to cheat he got the message and gave up.

get to first base

- *make a good start, succeed*

We haven't been able to get to first base with the other side about the terms of the new contract.

get to the bottom of/ heart of

- *find the most important facts or central meaning of something*

The Police tried to get to the bottom / heart of the problem with the burglary.

hard-nosed

- *very strict, stubborn*

The referee took a hard-nosed position during the match and showed three red cards.

horse trade

- *a business agreement or bargain arrived at after hard bargaining*

After several days of horse trading the company succeeded to sell the new computers to the other company.

in the bag

- *certain*

He was sure of himself that the match was in the bag.

lay one's cards on the table

- *let someone know one's position openly, deal honestly*

I always lay my cards on the table during the meetings.

off the record

- *not to be published or told, secret*

The minister told the journalists off the record that he would resign after the holiday.

pull off

- *succeed in doing something difficult or impossible*

The brakes of the bus failed but the driver pulled it off to stop it..

put one's cards on the table

- *let someone know one's position openly, deal honestly*

After long discussions both sides put their cards on the table.

read between the lines

- *understand the meaning of something by guessing at what is left unsaid*

If you want to understand that poet you should read between the lines.

take sides

- *join one group against another in a debate or quarrel*

Parents mustn't take sides in the discussions of their children.

talk into

- *get someone to agree to something, persuade*

The government tried hard to talk the other parties into the early elections.

talk out of

- *persuade not to do something*

The man tried to talk his wife out of divorcing.

talk over

- *discuss something*

The teachers were talking over the success rate of the school in the exam.

Birds Idioms

bird in the hand is worth two in the bush

- *one shouldn't risk losing something certain by trying to get something that is not certain*

People should keep the things well until they get the better one. Remember bird in the hand is worth two in the bush.

birds and bees

- *the facts about sex and birth*

Some parents teach their children about the birds and bees.

birds-eye view

- *a general view from above*

My house in the village has got a birds-eye view of the town.

birds of a feather flock together

- *people who are similar become friends or join together*

It's no use complaining about your friends. Remember birds of a feather flock together.

chicken-livered

- *cowardly, easily scared*

The man called his wife chicken-livered that she screamed when she saw a spider.

count one's chickens before they're hatched

- *depend or rely on getting something before one has it*

Don't count your chickens before they're hatched - remember the match hasn't finished yet.

duck soup

- *a task that does not require much effort*

The match was duck soup for my team. They won 6-0.

early bird catches the worm

- a person who gets up early in the morning has the best chance of success

My father gets up at 5 o'clock and says the early bird catches the worm

.....
.....
.....

eat like a bird

- eat very little

The little girl is sick she has been eating like a bird.

.....
.....
.....

kill the goose that lays the golden egg

- spoil something that is good or something that one has by being greedy

The government sold the telephone company. I think that they have killed the goose that lays the golden egg.

.....
.....
.....

kill two birds with one stone

- succeed in doing two things by only one action

My friend went to Ankara for a conference and visited his family so he killed two birds with one stone.

.....
.....
.....

ugly duckling

- ugly or plain child (who grows up to be pretty)

My parents say that I was an ugly duckling when I was a child.

.....
.....
.....

Body Idioms

bad blood

- anger or a bad relationship due to past problems with someone

Since the family had bad blood with another family they left the village.

.....
.....
.....

behind one's back

- when one is absent or without one's knowledge, secretly

Stop talking about her. I don't like talking behind people's back.

.....
.....
.....

blood is thicker than water

- family members are closer to one another than to others

When the young man heard the accident news he first tried to find his wife because blood is thicker than water.

.....
.....
.....

cold shoulder

- unfriendly treatment of a person

Old players gave the new player cold shoulder and he was very unhappy.

.....
.....
.....

cut one's throat

- spoil one's chances, ruin a person

This is your last chance. Stop cutting your throat.

.....
.....
.....

flesh and blood

- a close relative (father, daughter, brother)

It's my own flesh and blood who help me when I need money.

.....
.....
.....
hold one's breath

- *stop breathing for a moment when one is excited or nervous*

When they announced the exam results I held my breath and waited.
.....
.....
.....

jump down one's throat

- *suddenly become very angry at someone*

When he hit my son I jumped down his throat.
.....
.....
.....

keep body and soul together

- *keep alive, survive*

When the ship sank the crew of the ship tried to keep body and soul together.
.....
.....
.....

(not) move a muscle

- *move very little (usually used in the negative)*

While his wife was cleaning the house he didn't move a muscle.
.....
.....
.....

neck and neck

- *equal or nearly equal in a race or contest, tied*

The two candidates ran neck and neck until the end of the election.
.....
.....
.....

on one's back

- *making insistent demands of one, being an annoyance or bother*

The little girl is always on her daughter's back to do her homework.
.....
.....
.....

on one's shoulders

- *one's responsibility*

After the earthquake his brother's family was on his shoulders.
.....
.....
.....

save one's breath

- *keep silent because talking will not do any good*

If they insist on not understanding the problem, save your breath.
.....
.....
.....

save one's neck

- *save from danger or trouble*

In the accident everybody tried to save his own neck
.....
.....
.....

skin and bones

- *a person or animal that is very thin, someone very skinny*

The boy became skin and bones after his girlfriend had left him.
.....
.....
.....

turn one's back on

- *refuse to help someone in trouble or need*

Someone who turns his back on his friends is not a real friend.
.....
.....
.....

Business Idioms

at a loss

- *sell something and lose money*

To pay the hospital bill, the man sold his car at a loss.

bottom out

- *reach the lowest or worst point of something*

The value of the stock began to bottom out and should soon begin to increase in value.

boys in the backroom

- *a group of men making decisions behind the scenes*

The boys in the backroom told the man not to open a new restaurant.

budget squeeze/crunch

- *a situation where there is not enough money in the budget*

After leaving the job the man has been going through a budget squeeze.

by a long shot

- *by a big difference, by far*

The Mayor won the election by a long shot.

calculated risk

- *an action that may fail but has a good chance to succeed*

We took a calculated risk when we decided to accept the job offer in İstanbul.

carry the day

- *win completely*

The new chairman's new project carried the day and everybody congratulated him.

carry through

- *put into action*

The government carried through the new law to restructure the education system.

close out

- *sell the whole of something, sell all the goods*

Because of the economic problems they decided to close out the supermarket.

close the books

- *stop taking orders, end a bookkeeping period*

The companies in Turkey close the books at the end of January.

company town

- *a town dominated by one industry or company*

When the timber company closed down the company town faced severe economic problems.



cut off

- interrupt or stop

The opening speech of the Minister was cut off by the bad news.

.....
.....
.....

double-check

- check something again to confirm

Please , double check the arrival time of the plane so that we won't wait there long.

.....
.....
.....

fair play

- justice, equal and right action to someone

The director asked the players to use fair play when they start the match.

.....
.....
.....

figure out

- find an answer by thinking about something

Everyone at school is trying to figure out how they will solve the problems.

.....
.....
.....

give someone the green light

- give permission to go ahead with a project

The Prime Minister gave the Minister of Education the green light to start a new education program.

.....
.....
.....

hard sell

- sell something by being very aggressive

Most people don't like the salesmen who give hard sell.

.....
.....
.....

heads will roll

- someone will be punished

Heads will roll when the team loses the match.

.....
.....
.....

in charge of

- in control of, responsible for

I am in charge of preparing all the English tests for school.

.....
.....
.....

in the long run

- in the final result

You can't earn money in a short time . You should think it in the long run.

.....
.....
.....

(buy) on credit

- buy something without paying cash

After having some problems with my bank I decided not to buy anything on credit.

.....
.....
.....

run short

- not have enough in quantity

While they were driving to London they ran short of Petrol.

.....
.....
.....

strike while the iron is hot

- take advantage of an opportunity

They will strike while the iron is hot and market all the swimsuits in Summer.

.....
.....
.....



sweetheart deal

- a deal made between friends so that both may make a big profit

We made a sweetheart deal with friend and built a new house.

take over

- take control or possession of something, take charge or responsibility

His father decided to take over the company after his son lost a lot of money.

turn over

- to buy and then sell something to customers

The yearly turn-over of the company was about 3 million \$.

Clothes Idioms

air one's dirty linen in public

- tell about one's private quarrels or problems where others can hear

I can't stand my wife airing my dirty linen in public.

below the belt

- in an unfair or cowardly way

In most of the critics people try to hit below the belt.

birthday suit

- complete nakedness

At the lakeside two little boys were running around in their birthday suit.

catch with one's pants down

- surprise someone in an embarrassing situation or a guilty act

The thief was caught with his pants down when he stole a computer from a house.

die with one's boots on

- die while still active in one's work

Mr Sabancı worked hard all his life and died with his boots on.

dressed to the nines (teeth)

- dressed elegantly

All the people were dressed to the nines when they went to the best model ceremony.

dress up

- put on one's best clothes

His wife tries to dress up when they go out for dinner.

fill one's shoes

- take the place of another and do as well

It will be difficult for the person who will fill the shoes of the previous Mayor.

if the shoe fits wear it

- *that what is said in general can also be said of an individual person*

Never criticize others for the things that you would do yourself. Remember, if the shoe fits wear it.

in one's shoes

- *in another's place or position*

My son says that he would hate to be in my shoes that I work hard.

lose one's shirt

- *lose all or most of one's money*

The young actor lost his shirt gambling and now he is in serious financial difficulty.

off the cuff

- *without preparation*

I never like off-the-cuff speech. I don't feel relaxed.

pull up one's socks

- *make a greater effort*

It's time for the students that they pull up their socks and begin to study for the final exam.

shoe is on the other foot

- *the opposite is true, places are changed*

When I made a mistake my friend laughed at me. Now the shoe is on the other foot.

too big for one's breeches/boots

- *think that you are more important than you really are*

Some people are too big for their breeches and they don't like people who make them realize that they are not very important.

wolf in sheep's clothing

- *a person who pretends to be good but really is bad*

Her mother warned daughter to be careful that there are wolves in sheep's clothing.

Colour Idioms

black and white

- *thinking of everything or judging everything as either good or bad*

One of the problems that young people have is that they can't see in black and white.

black sheep (of the family)

- *a person who is a disgrace to a family or group*

The boy who was dismissed from the school was the black sheep in his family.

blue in the face

- *very angry or upset, excited and very emotional*

Two women argued on the road and they were blue in face.

.....
.....
.....
catch (someone) red-handed

- *catch someone in the middle of doing something wrong*

The robbers were caught red handed at the bank trying to rob it.
.....
.....

.....
grass is always greener on the other side

- *a place that is far away or different seems better than where we are now*

The man realized that the grass is greener on the other side when he bought his new car that it wasn't perfect.
.....
.....

.....
look at (see) the world through rose-colored glasses

- *see only the good things about something, be too optimistic*

Some young people always look at the world through rose-colored glasses and can't see the difficulties.
.....
.....

.....
pot calling the kettle black

- *the person who is criticizing someone else is as guilty as the person he accuses*

One student criticized the other for not getting good mark but that was like the pot calling the kettle black. He got bad mark , too.
.....
.....

.....
red-letter day

- *a day that is memorable because of some important event*

It was a red-letter day for my son when he graduated from high school.

.....
.....
.....
show one's true colours

- *show what one is really like*

I don't like people who tell lie and don't show their true colours.
.....
.....

.....
white as a ghost

- *very pale because of fear, shock, illness etc.*

The child became white as a ghost when he saw the big dog in the garden.
.....
.....

.....
white lie

- *a harmless lie (told to be polite or to do something not seriously wrong)*

I sometimes tell a white lie and say that I was very busy at work and I was late.
.....
.....

Arm/Hand/Leg Idioms

all thumbs

- *clumsy, have difficulty fixing things or working with one's hands*

My friends say I am all thumbs and can never fix things without making them worse.
.....
.....

.....
at hand

- *easy to reach, nearby*

My father is very tidy and wants any tools near at hand.

.....
.....
.....
bite the hand that feeds one

- turn against or hurt a helper or supporter, repay kindness with wrong

My niece will be biting the hand that feeds her if she keeps abusing the help that her parents are giving her.

.....
.....
.....
burn one's fingers

- learn caution through an unpleasant experience

A lot of people burned their fingers on the stock market and don't want to invest money there again.

.....
.....
.....
cross one's fingers

- cross two fingers of one hand to hope or wish for good luck

I crossed my fingers that my team would be able to win the match.

.....
.....
.....
dirty one's hands

- hurt one's character or good name, do a bad or shameful thing

The director dirtied his hands when he became involved in the questionable money deals.

.....
.....
.....
one foot in the grave

- near death

One of our neighbours is suffering from cancer and has one foot in the grave.

get off on the wrong foot

- make a bad start, begin with a mistake

Unfortunately our relationship with my girlfriend got off on the wrong foot.

.....
.....
.....
give one's right arm

- give something of great value

I would give my right arm to help my wife with her illness.

.....
.....
.....
give someone a hand

- help someone with something

My friends gave me a hand moving into new office.

.....
.....
.....
glad hand

- a friendly handshake, a warm greeting

The new director glad handed the people in the Office all day.

.....
.....
.....
hands-down

- easy, unopposed

The mayor won the election hands-down for the second time.

.....
.....
.....
live from hand to mouth

- live on very little money

A lot of people in Turkey have been living from hand to mouth since they have no job.

feet on the ground

- *an understanding of what can be done, sensible ideas*

The new Prime minister has his feet on the ground and will probably be able to come up with a sensible solution to country's problems.

shake a leg

- *go fast, hurry*

"Please try and shake a leg. We are already late for the film."

stand on one's own two feet

- *be independent*

Most parents try to do something to make their children stand on their own two feet.

tail between one's legs

- *state of feeling beaten, ashamed, or very obedient, as after a scolding or a whipping*

The man left the office with his tail between his legs after he admitted telling a lie about the product.

twist/wrap someone around one's little finger

- *have complete control over*

Most wives have their husbands wrapped around their little fingers and they are able to do anything that they want.

with open arms

- *warmly, eagerly, show that one is glad to see someone*

We were welcomed with open arms when we went to my hometown for the first time.

Eye/Ear/Nose Idioms

all ears

- *very eager to hear, very attentive*

The people on the other table were all ears while the couple was talking angrily.

all eyes

- *watching very closely, wide-eyed with surprise*

I am all eyes when I go to the museum for the first time.

believe one's ears

- *believe what one hears, become sure of (something)*

The man couldn't believe his ears when he heard that he had won the lottery.

believe one's eyes

- *believe what one sees, become sure of seeing something*

She couldn't believe her eyes when she saw that his car's windscreen was broken.

catch one's eye

- *attract one's attention*

When the woman went home her daughter tried to catch her eye.

eye for an eye and a tooth for a tooth
- every crime or injury should be punished or paid back

In some countries people are always calling for an eye for an eye and a tooth for a tooth.

hit between the eyes
- make a strong impression on, surprise greatly

The news about the illness hit the family between the eyes and totally shocked them.

keep an eye on
- watch carefully, continue paying attention to

We asked our neighbours to keep an eye on our house when we went away for the weekend..

keep one's nose clean
- stay out of trouble

Most parents and teachers advise young people to keep their nose clean in the street.

keep one's nose out of something
- keep out of or away from

The prisoner promised the judge that he would keep his nose out of other people's business.

lend/give an ear to
- listen to

I always try to lend an ear to the people when they tell me their problems.

turn a deaf ear to
- pretend not to hear, not pay attention

I turned a deaf ear to the complaints of my boss about the cost of the new product.

Numbers Idioms

all in one
- combined

I can use my mobile phone for talking and taking photos all in one.

at sixes and sevens
- in a state of confusion

The workers were at sixes and sevens after they heard that the factory would stop.

kill two birds with one stone
- achieve two aims with one effort/action

If you learn a foreign language and computer at school you will kill two birds with one stone.

one and only
- the only person or thing

The factory is manufacturing the one and only jet plane in the world.

one by one

- individually, one at a time

Students left the classroom one by one.

one good turn deserves another

- if someone helps you it is fair to help them in return

One good turn deserves another so I tried to help the family who had helped me when I was a student.

put two and two together

- make a correct guess

The police put two and two together and caught the thief.

seventh heaven

- in a situation of great happiness

The young man has been in seventh heaven since his girlfriend accepted to marry him.

six feet under

- dead and buried

My mother has been six feet under for over eight years now.

two heads are better than one

- it is better to work with another person to solve problems etc

Two heads are usually better than one when you are working on a Project.

two wrongs don't make a right

- you can't justify a wrong action by saying that someone else did the same thing to you

If your friend does something bad to you, you should not try and hurt him as well because two wrongs don't make a right

Animals Idioms

badger someone

- get someone to do something by repeated questions or by bothering them

I don't like people who badger me to do something.

bark up the wrong tree

- choose the wrong course of action

The Police are barking up the wrong tree. They accuse the man of killing the woman but he was away at the time.

bet on the wrong horse

- misread the future

I hate betting on the wrong horse and I double-check everything before I decide.

cat get one's tongue

- can't speak because of shyness

The cat has got his tongue. The boy did not say anything at all.

cat nap

- a short sleep taken during the day

Doctors advice to have a cat nap during the afternoon so people would feel refreshed in the evening.

change horses in midstream

- make new plans or choose a new leader in the middle of an important activity

Choose one way and don't change horses in midstream.

copycat

- someone who copies another person's work etc.

Her friends say that she is a copycat in the class.

curiosity killed the cat

- being too nosy may lead a person into trouble

We shouldn't worry about what others are doing. Remember curiosity killed the cat.

donkey's years

- a very long time

I decided to visit my sister because I hadn't seen her in donkey's years.

eat like a horse

- eat a lot

Some people eat like a horse.

lead a dog's life

- work hard and be treated unkindly

The man is leading a dog's life since he started that job.

let sleeping dogs lie

- don't make trouble if you don't have to

You should let sleeping dogs lie and not ask people any questions about the argument.

look a gift horse in the mouth

- complain if a gift is not perfect

people shouldn't look a gift horse in the mouth and they should be happy that they get a present..

monkey business

- unethical or bad activity, mischief

If you want to live honestly you should stop that monkey business and try to do the job the correct way.

play cat and mouse with someone

- tease or fool someone

The man is playing a cat and mouse game with the company about his plans.

**Write the Turkish equivalents of the following quotes
and then write your ideas about them.**

1. **Beauty is only skin deep, and the world is full of thin skinned people.**
Richard Armour
.....
.....
.....
2. **Those who bring sunshine to the lives of others cannot keep it from themselves.**
James Barrie
.....
.....
.....
3. **When one door closes another one opens; but we so often look so long and so regretfully upon the closed door, that we do not see the ones which open for us.**
Alexander Graham Bell
.....
.....
.....
4. **It is easier to forgive an enemy than to forgive a friend.** *William Blake*
.....
.....
.....
5. **You can discover what your enemy fears most by observing the means he uses to frighten you.** *Eric Hoffer*
.....
.....
.....
6. **When a friend is in trouble, don't annoy him by asking if there is anything you can do. Think up something appropriate and do it.** *Edgar Watson Howe*
.....
.....
.....
7. **True friendship is like sound health; the value of it is seldom known until it be lost.** *Charles Caleb Colton*
.....
.....
.....
8. **The first half of our lives are ruined by our parents, and the second half by our children.** *Clarence Darrow*
.....
.....
.....
9. **I can't change the direction of the wind, but I can adjust my sails to always reach my destination.** *Jimmy Dean*
.....
.....
.....

10. Dream as if you'll live forever. Live as if you'll die tomorrow. *James Dean*

.....
.....
.....

11. If you can dream it, you can do it. *Walt Disney*

.....
.....
.....

12. To love someone means to see him as God intended him. *Feodor Dostoevsky*

.....
.....
.....

13. No man is a failure who is enjoying life. *William Feather*

.....
.....
.....

14. Friendship is like money, easier made than kept. *Samuel Butler*

.....
.....
.....

15. Don't walk in front of me, I may not follow.

Don't walk behind me, I may not lead.

Just walk beside me and be my friend. *Albert Camus*

.....
.....
.....

16. One machine can do the work of fifty ordinary men.

No machine can do the work of one extraordinary man. *Elbert Hubbard*

.....
.....
.....

17. Love is much like a wild rose, beautiful and calm, but willing to draw blood in its defence. *Mark Overby*

.....
.....
.....

18. The real measure of our wealth is how much we'd be worth if we lost all our money. *J.H. Jowett*

.....
.....
.....

19. If your lips would keep from slips,

Five things observe with care;

To whom you speak, of whom you speak,

And how, and when, and where.

W.E. Norris

.....
.....
.....

20. People who work sitting down get paid more than people who work standing up.

Odgen Nash

21. The pain of not doing something, is greater than the pain of doing something.

William Dennis Miner

22. The time to be happy is now; the place to be happy is here. *Robert G. Ingersoll*

23. Love is the greatest refreshment in life. *Pablo Picasso*

**24. Great minds discuss ideas,
Average minds discuss events,
Small minds discuss people**
Hyman Rickover, Admiral, U.S. Navy

25. When love and skill work together expect a masterpiece. *John Ruskin*

26. There is no possession more valuable than a good and faithful friend. *Socrates*

**27. It is better to have loved and lost
Than never to have loved at all.** *Alfred Tennyson*

28. As long as you're going to be thinking anyway, think big. *Donald Trump*

29. To believe yourself to be brave is to be brave; it is the only essential thing.
Mark Twain

30. It is easier to do a job right than to explain why you didn't. *Martin Van Buren*

31. **Nothing is too small to know, and nothing is too big to attempt.** *William Van Horne*

.....

.....

.....

32. **People come into your life for a reason, a season, or a lifetime.**
When you figure out which it is you'll know exactly what to do. *Michelle Ventor*

.....

.....

.....

33. **No man is rich enough to buy back his past.** *Oscar Wilde*

.....

.....

.....

34. **Give me the children until they are seven and anyone may have them afterwards.**
St. Francis Xavier

.....

.....

.....

35. **Education is not the filling of a pail, but the lighting of a fire.** *William Butler Yeats*

.....

.....

.....

36. **There are too many people, and too few human beings.** *Robert Zand*

.....

.....

.....

37. **Those who love deeply never grown old; they may die of old age, but they die young.** — *Arthur Wing Pinero*

.....

.....

.....

38. **If you love something, let it go. If it comes back it's yours. If it doesn't, it never really was in the first place.** — *Anonymous*

.....

.....

.....

39. **A successful marriage requires falling in love many times, always with the same person.** ~*Mignon McLaughlin*

.....

.....

.....

40. **Motivation is like food for the brain. You cannot get enough in one sitting. It needs continual and regular top up's.--** *Peter Davies*

.....

.....

.....

41. **"Love is the only force capable of turning an enemy into a friend."** *Martin Luther King,*

.....
.....
.....

42. **"There was never a good war or a bad peace."** *Benjamin Franklin*

.....
.....
.....

43. **"The best way to destroy an enemy is to make him a friend."** -- *Abraham Lincoln*

.....
.....
.....

44. **I love you - those three words have my life in them.** *by Alexandra to Nicholas III*

.....
.....
.....

45. **"Only a life lived for others is worth living."** -- *Albert Einstein.*

.....
.....

46. **"Live, let live, and help live"** -- *Ralph Waldo Emerson*

.....
.....
.....

47. **"Kindness gives birth to kindness."** -- *Sophocles.*

.....
.....
.....

48. **"Give help rather than advice."** -- *Luc de Vauvenargues*

.....
.....
.....

49. **"I wish you all the joy that you can wish."** -- *William Shakespeare*

.....
.....
.....

50. **Happiness is not something you postpone for the future; it is something you design for the present.** -- *Jim Rohn*

.....
.....
.....

PROVERBS

Write the Turkish equivalents of the following proverbs.

A bad workman always blames his tools.

A bird in the hands worth two in the bush.

A cock crows on his own dunghill.

A drowning man will catch a straw.

A false friend and a shadow appear only when the sun shines.

A friend in need is a friend indeed.

A living dog is better than a dead lion.

A quiet baby gets no suck.

A rolling stone gathers no moss.

After a storm comes a calm.

All roads lead to Rome

All that glitters is not gold.

Clothes do not make the man.

Coming events cast their shadows before.

Cut your coat according to your cloth.

Diamond cuts diamond.

Do not change horse in midstream.

Don't judge a book by its cover.

Drink nothing without seeing it, sign nothing without reading it



Easy come easy go.

Empty vessels make the most noise.

Every horse thinks his pack heavy.

Fish and guests begin to stink after the first three days.

Friends may always meet but mountains never.

Give in rather than suffer.

Haste makes waste.

Health is better than wealth.

Honesty is the best policy.

There's no smoke without fire.

Trust in God but tie your camel.

Two men look through the same bars. One sees the mud, one sees the stars.

Well done is better than well said.

What one fears always happens.

What you don't want others to do to you, do not do the others.

When in Rome do as the Romans do.

When the cat is away, the mice will play.

When you go to buy, use your eyes, not your ears.

Who pays the piper calls the tune.

Words cut more than swords.

CLASSIFIED IRREGULAR VERBS

Cost	cost	cost	Pay	paid	paid
Cut	cut	cut	Make	made	made
Hit	hit	hit	Stand	stood	stood
Hurt	hurt	hurt	Understand	understood	understood
Let	let	let	Break	broke	broken
Put	put	put	Choose	chose	chosen
Shut	shut	shut			
Lend	lent	lent	Speak	spoke	spoken
Send	sent	sent	Steal	stole	stolen
Spend	spent	spent	Wake	woke	woken
Build	built	built	Drive	drove	driven
Burn	burnt	burnt	Ride	rode	ridden
Learn	learnt	learnt	Rise	rose	risen
Smell	smelt	smelt	Write	wrote	written
Lose	lost	lost	Beat	beat	beaten
Shoot	shot	shot	Bite	bit	bitten
Get	got	got	Hide	hid	hidden
Light	lit	lit	Eat	ate	eaten
Sit	sat	sat	Fall	fell	fallen
Keep	kept	kept	Forget	forgot	forgotten
Sleep	slept	slept	Give	gave	given
Feel	felt	felt	See	saw	seen
Leave	left	left	Take	took	taken
Meet	met	met	Blow	blew	blown
Dream	dreamt	dreamt	Grow	grew	grown
Mean	meant	meant	Know	knew	known
Bring	brought	brought	Throw	threw	thrown
Buy	bought	bought	Fly	flew	flown
Fight	fought	fought	Draw	drew	drown
Think	thought	thought	Show	showed	shown
Catch	caught	caught	Begin	began	begun
Teach	taught	taught	Drink	drank	drunk
Sell	sold	sold	Swim	swam	swum
Tell	told	told	Ring	rang	rung
Find	found	found	Sing	sang	sung
Have	had	had	Run	ran	run
Hear	heard	heard	Come	came	come
Hold	held	held	Become	became	become
Read*	read	read			
Say	said	said			

* Pronunciation is different.

IRREGULAR VERBS

Infinitive	Past simple	Past participle
Be	was/were	been
Beat	beat	beaten
Become	became	become
Begin	began	begun
Bite	bit	bitten
Blow	blew	blown
Break	broke	broken
Bring	brought	brought
Build	built	built
Buy	bought	bought
Catch	caught	caught
Choose	chose	chosen
Come	came	come
Cost	cost	cost
Cut	cut	cut
Do	did	done
Draw	drew	drawn
Drink	drank	drunk
Drive	drove	driven
Eat	ate	eaten
Fall	fell	fallen
Feel	felt	felt
Fight	fought	fought
Find	found	found
Fly	flew	flown
Forget	forgot	forgotten
Get	got	got
Give	gave	given
Go	went	gone
Grow	grew	grown
Hang	hung	hung
Have	had	had
Hear	heard	heard
Hide	hid	hidden
Hit	hit	hit
Hold	held	held
Hurt	hurt	hurt
Keep	kept	kept
Know	knew	known
Leave	left	left
Lend	lent	lent

Infinitive	Past simple	Past participle
Let	let	let
Lie	lay	lain
Light	lit	lit
Lose	lost	lost
Make	made	made
Mean	meant	meant
Meet	met	met
Pay	paid	paid
Put	put	put
Read*	read	read
Ride	rode	ridden
Ring	rang	rung
Rise	rose	risen
Run	ran	run
Say	said	said
See	saw	seen
Sell	sold	sold
Send	sent	sent
Shine	shone	shone
Shoot	shot	shot
Show	showed	shown
Shut	shut	shut
Sing	sang	sung
Sit	sat	sat
Sleep	slept	slept
Speak	spoke	spoken
Spend	spent	spent
Stand	stood	stood
Steal	stole	stolen
Swim	swam	swum
Take	took	taken
Teach	taught	taught
Tear	tore	torn
Tell	told	told
Think	thought	thought
Throw	threw	thrown
Understand	understood	understood
Wake	woke	woken
Wear	wore	worn
Win	won	won
Write	wrote	written

The following verbs can be regular or irregular.

Infinitive Past Simple / Past Participle

Burn	burned or burnt
Dream	dreamed or dreamt

* **Pronunciation is different.**

Infinitive Past Simple / Past Participle

Learn	learned or learnt
Smell	smelled or smelt